



OASIS ebXML Messaging Services Version 3.0: Part 1, Core Features

Committee Specification 02, 12 July 2007

Document Identifier:

ebms_core-3.0-spec-cs-02

This Version:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/cs02/ebms_core-3.0-spec-cs-02.pdf

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/cs02/ebms_core-3.0-spec-cs-02.html

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/cs02/ebms_core-3.0-spec-cs-02.odt

Previous Version:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/cd06/ebms_core-3.0-spec-cd-06.pdf

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/cd06/ebms_core-3.0-spec-cd-06.html

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/cd06/ebms_core-3.0-spec-cd-06.odt

Latest Version:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms_core-3.0-spec.pdf

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms_core-3.0-spec.html

http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms_core-3.0-spec.odt

Technical Committee:

OASIS ebXML Messaging Services TC

Chair:

Ian Jones, British Telecommunications plc <ian.c.jones@bt.com>

Editor:

Pete Wenzel, Sun Microsystems <pete.wenzel@sun.com>

Related Work:

This specification is related to:

- ebXML Message Services 2.0
- SOAP 1.1, 1.2
- Web Services Security: SOAP Message Security 1.0, 1.1
- WS-Reliability 1.1
- WS-ReliableMessaging 1.1

Declared XML Namespace:

<http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/>

Abstract:

This specification defines a communications-protocol neutral method for exchanging electronic business messages. It defines specific Web Services-based enveloping constructs supporting reliable, secure delivery of business information. Furthermore, the specification defines a flexible enveloping technique, permitting messages to contain payloads of any format type. This versatility ensures legacy electronic business systems employing traditional syntaxes (i.e. UN/EDIFACT,

40 ASC X12, or HL7) can leverage the advantages of the ebXML infrastructure along with users of
41 emerging technologies.

42 **Status:**

43 This document was last revised or approved by the TC on the above date. The level of approval is
44 also listed above. Check the current location noted above for possible later revisions of this
45 document. This document is updated periodically on no particular schedule.

46 Technical Committee members should send comments on this specification to the
47 ebxml-msg@lists.oasis-open.org list. Others should use the comment form at
48 http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/comments/form.php?wg_abbrev=ebxml-msg.

49 For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to
50 implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the
51 Intellectual Property Rights section of the OASIS ebXML Messaging Services TC web page
52 (<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/ebxml-msg/ipr.php>).

53 The non-normative errata page for this specification is located at [http://www.oasis-](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/ebxml-msg/)
54 [open.org/committees/ebxml-msg/](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/ebxml-msg/).

55

56 Notices

57 Copyright © OASIS® 1993–2007. All Rights Reserved. OASIS trademark, IPR and other policies apply.

58 All capitalized terms in the following text have the meanings assigned to them in the OASIS Intellectual
59 Property Rights Policy (the "OASIS IPR Policy"). The full Policy may be found at the OASIS website.

60 This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that
61 comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published,
62 and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright notice
63 and this section are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document itself may
64 not be modified in any way, including by removing the copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as
65 needed for the purpose of developing any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical
66 Committee (in which case the rules applicable to copyrights, as set forth in the OASIS IPR Policy, must be
67 followed) or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

68 The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its successors
69 or assigns.

70 This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS
71 DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY
72 WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY
73 OWNERSHIP RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A
74 PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

75 OASIS requests that any OASIS Party or any other party that believes it has patent claims that would
76 necessarily be infringed by implementations of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, to
77 notify OASIS TC Administrator and provide an indication of its willingness to grant patent licenses to such
78 patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced
79 this specification.

80 OASIS invites any party to contact the OASIS TC Administrator if it is aware of a claim of ownership of any
81 patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this specification by a patent
82 holder that is not willing to provide a license to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR
83 Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification. OASIS may include such
84 claims on its website, but disclaims any obligation to do so.

85 OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that
86 might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document or
87 the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it represent
88 that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on OASIS' procedures with respect to
89 rights in any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee can be found on the
90 OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses
91 to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission for the
92 use of such proprietary rights by implementers or users of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS
93 Standard, can be obtained from the OASIS TC Administrator. OASIS makes no representation that any
94 information or list of intellectual property rights will at any time be complete, or that any claims in such list
95 are, in fact, Essential Claims.

96 The names "OASIS", "ebXML", "OASIS ebXML Messaging Services", "ebMS" are trademarks of OASIS,
97 the owner and developer of this specification, and should be used only to refer to the organization and its
98 official outputs. OASIS welcomes reference to, and implementation and use of, specifications, while
99 reserving the right to enforce its marks against misleading uses. Please see [http://www.oasis-](http://www.oasis-open.org/who/trademark.php)
100 [open.org/who/trademark.php](http://www.oasis-open.org/who/trademark.php) for above guidance.

101

Table of Contents

102		
103	1. Introduction.....	9
104	1.1. Background and Objectives.....	9
105	1.2. Scope.....	9
106	1.3. Web Services and Their Role in an eBusiness Messaging Framework.....	10
107	1.4. Caveats and Assumptions.....	10
108	1.5. General Rules for Normative Interpretation.....	11
109	1.6. XML Notation.....	11
110	1.7. Namespace Prefixes.....	11
111	1.8. Example Domains.....	12
112	1.9. Normative References.....	12
113	1.10. Non-Normative References.....	13
114	2. Messaging Model.....	14
115	2.1. Terminology and Concepts.....	14
116	2.1.1. Components of the Model.....	14
117	2.1.2. Message Terminology.....	15
118	2.1.3. Messaging Roles.....	15
119	2.1.4. Abstract Messaging Operations.....	16
120	2.2. Message Exchange Patterns.....	16
121	2.2.1. Rationale.....	16
122	2.2.2. General Definition	16
123	2.2.3. MEP Bindings.....	17
124	2.2.4. Relationship to SOAP MEPs	18
125	2.2.5. The One-Way/Push MEP.....	19
126	2.2.6. The One-Way/Pull MEP.....	19
127	2.2.7. The Two-Way/Sync MEP.....	20
128	2.2.8. Other Transport-Channel-Bound MEPs.....	21
129	3. Message Pulling and Partitioning.....	22
130	3.1. Objectives.....	22
131	3.2. Supporting Message Pulling.....	22
132	3.3. Combining Pulling with Security and Reliability.....	23
133	3.4. Message Partition Channels.....	24
134	3.4.1. Concept and Purpose.....	24
135	3.4.2. Some Use Cases.....	26
136	3.4.3. Definition and Usage Requirements.....	28
137	4. Processing Modes.....	29
138	4.1. Messaging Service Processing Model.....	29
139	4.2. Processing Mode Features.....	30
140	4.3. Default Features for Processing Mode.....	31
141	5. Message Packaging.....	33
142	5.1. Message Envelope and Message Parts.....	33
143	5.1.1. MIME Structure and SOAP Profile.....	33
144	5.1.2. MIME and XML Considerations.....	36
145	5.1.3. ebXML SOAP Envelope Extension.....	36
146	5.1.4. ebMS Header.....	38

147	5.1.5. Payload Containers.....	38
148	5.2. The eb:Messaging Container Element.....	39
149	5.2.1. eb:Messaging Element Specification.....	40
150	5.2.2. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage.....	41
151	5.2.3. eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage.....	46
152	5.2.4. Message Unit Bundling.....	46
153	5.3. Examples of ebMS Messages.....	47
154	5.3.1. UserMessage Example.....	47
155	5.3.2. PullRequest Message Example.....	49
156	5.3.3. Error Message Example.....	49
157	5.3.4. Receipt Message Example.....	50
158	5.3.5. "Bundled" Message Example.....	50
159	6. Error Handling.....	52
160	6.1. Terminology.....	52
161	6.2. Packaging of ebMS Errors.....	52
162	6.2.1. eb:Error Element.....	52
163	6.2.2. eb:Error/@origin.....	53
164	6.2.3. eb:Error/@category.....	53
165	6.2.4. eb:Error/@errorCode.....	53
166	6.2.5. eb:Error/@severity.....	53
167	6.2.6. eb:Error/@refToMessageInError.....	53
168	6.2.7. eb:Error/@shortDescription.....	53
169	6.2.8. eb:Error/Description.....	53
170	6.2.9. eb:Error/ErrorDetail.....	53
171	6.3. ebMS Error Message.....	53
172	6.4. Extensibility of the Error Element.....	54
173	6.4.1. Adding new ebMS Errors.....	54
174	6.5. Generating ebMS Errors.....	54
175	6.6. Error Reporting.....	54
176	6.7. Standard ebMS Errors.....	55
177	6.7.1. ebMS Processing Errors.....	55
178	6.7.2. Security Processing Errors.....	56
179	6.7.3. Reliable Messaging Errors.....	56
180	7. Security Module.....	57
181	7.1. Security Element.....	57
182	7.2. Signing Messages.....	57
183	7.3. Signing SOAP with Attachments Messages.....	58
184	7.4. Encrypting Messages.....	58
185	7.5. Encrypting SOAP with Attachments Messages.....	58
186	7.6. Signing and Encrypting Messages.....	58
187	7.7. Security Token Authentication.....	58
188	7.8. Security Policy Errors.....	58
189	7.9. Secured Message Examples.....	59
190	7.9.1. Digitally Signed and Encrypted ebXML Message.....	59
191	7.9.2. Digitally Signed and Encrypted ebXML SOAP with Attachments Message.....	61
192	7.9.3. Digitally Signed Receipt Signal Message.....	63

193	7.10. Message Authorization	64
194	7.11. Securing the PullRequest Signal.....	66
195	7.11.1. Authentication.....	66
196	7.11.2. Authorization.....	66
197	7.11.3. Preventing Replay Attacks.....	66
198	7.12. Countermeasure Technologies.....	66
199	7.12.1. Persistent Digital Signature.....	66
200	7.12.2. Persistent Signed Receipt.....	66
201	7.12.3. Non-Persistent Authentication.....	67
202	7.12.4. Non-Persistent Integrity.....	67
203	7.12.5. Persistent Confidentiality.....	67
204	7.12.6. Non-Persistent Confidentiality.....	67
205	7.12.7. Persistent Authorization.....	67
206	7.12.8. Non-Persistent Authorization.....	67
207	7.13. Security Considerations.....	67
208	8. Reliable Messaging Module.....	69
209	8.1. The Reliable Messaging Model.....	69
210	8.1.1. Message Processing.....	69
211	8.1.2. The Reliable Messaging Processor in the MSH.....	69
212	8.2. Reliable Delivery of ebMS Messages.....	71
213	8.2.1. Reliability Contracts for the RMP.....	71
214	8.2.2. Reliability Contracts for the MSH.....	72
215	8.2.3. Reliability for Signal Messages.....	73
216	8.2.4. Handling of Delivery Failures.....	73
217	8.3. Reliability of ebMS MEPs.....	74
218	8.3.1. Reliability of the One-Way/Push MEP.....	74
219	8.3.2. Reliability of the One-Way/Pull MEP.....	75
220	8.3.3. Reliability of the Two-Way/Sync MEP.....	76
221	8.3.4. Reliability of Other Transport-Channel-Bound MEPs.....	77
222	APPENDIX A. The ebXML SOAP Extension Element Schema.....	78
223	APPENDIX B. Reliable Messaging Bindings.....	82
224	B.1. WS-Reliability Binding.....	82
225	B.1.1. Operations and Contracts Binding.....	82
226	B.1.2. Complement to the Reliability of the One-Way/Push MEP.....	82
227	B.1.3. Complement to the Reliability of the One-Way/Pull MEP.....	82
228	B.1.4. Complement to the Reliability of the Two-Way/Sync MEP.....	83
229	B.2. WS-ReliableMessaging Binding.....	85
230	B.2.1. Operations and Contracts Binding.....	85
231	B.2.2. Complement to the Reliability of the One-Way/Push MEP.....	86
232	B.2.3. Complement to the Reliability of the One-Way/Pull MEP.....	87
233	B.2.4. Complement to the Reliability of the Two-Way/Sync MEP.....	87
234	APPENDIX C. SOAP Format and Bindings.....	89
235	C.1. Using SwA with SOAP-1.1.....	89
236	C.2. Using SwA with SOAP-1.2.....	90
237	C.3. SMTP Binding.....	91
238	APPENDIX D. Processing Modes.....	92

239	D.1. Objectives and Usage.....	92
240	D.2. Model for Processing Modes.....	93
241	D.2.1. Notation.....	94
242	D.3. Processing Mode Parameters.....	95
243	D.3.1. General P-Mode Parameters.....	95
244	D.3.2. PMode[1].Protocol.....	96
245	D.3.3. PMode[1].BusinessInfo.....	96
246	D.3.4. PMode[1].ErrorHandling.....	96
247	D.3.5. PMode[1].Reliability.....	97
248	D.3.6. PMode[1].Security.....	98
249	APPENDIX E. P-Mode Values and ebMS MEP Bindings.....	100
250	E.1. P-Mode Values and the One-Way/Push MEP.....	100
251	E.2. P-Mode Values and the One-Way/Pull MEP.....	101
252	E.3. P-Mode Values and the Two-Way/Sync MEP.....	102
253	APPENDIX F. Compatibility Mapping to ebMS 2.0.....	103
254	F.1. Objectives and Approach.....	103
255	F.2. Compatibility Mapping Rules.....	103
256	F.2.1. (CM1) Header Mapping Rules.....	103
257	F.2.2. (CM2) Payload Mapping Rules.....	104
258	F.2.3. (CM3) Reliability Mapping Rules.....	104
259	F.2.4. (CM4) MEP Mapping Rules.....	105
260	F.2.5. (CM5) Signal Mapping Rules.....	107
261	F.2.6. (CM6) Processing Mode Mapping Rules.....	108
262	APPENDIX G. Conformance.....	109
263	APPENDIX H. Acknowledgments.....	110
264	APPENDIX I. Revision History.....	111
265		

266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282

Table of Figures

Figure 1: Entities of the Messaging Model and Their Interactions.....	15
Figure 2: One-Way/Push MEP.....	19
Figure 3: One-Way/Pull MEP.....	20
Figure 4: Two-Way/Sync MEP.....	21
Figure 5: One-Way/Pull with Message Partition Channels.....	26
Figure 6: Message Partition Channel Use Cases.....	27
Figure 7: Component Relationships.....	30
Figure 8: User Message Structure.....	34
Figure 9: Signal Message Structure.....	35
Figure 10: Sending an ebMS Message Reliably.....	70
Figure 11: Sending an ebMS MEP Response Message Reliably.....	71
Figure 12: Reliable One-Way/Push MEP.....	75
Figure 13: Reliable One-Way/Pull MEP.....	76
Figure 14: Reliable Two-Way/Sync MEP.....	77
Figure 15: P-Mode Structure for Two-Way/Push-and-Pull MEP.....	94

283

1. Introduction

284 This specification describes a communication-protocol neutral method for exchanging electronic business
285 messages. It defines specific enveloping constructs supporting reliable, secure delivery of business
286 information. Furthermore, the specification defines a flexible enveloping technique, permitting messages
287 to contain payloads of any format type. This versatility ensures that legacy electronic business systems
288 employing traditional syntaxes (i.e. UN/EDIFACT, ASC X12, or HL7) can leverage the advantages of the
289 ebXML infrastructure along with users of emerging technologies.

290

1.1. Background and Objectives

291 The prime objective of the ebXML Messaging Service (ebMS) is to facilitate the exchange of electronic
292 business messages within an XML framework that leverages common Internet standards, without making
293 any assumption on the integration and consumption model these messages will follow on the back-end.
294 These messages may be consumed in different ways that are out of scope of this specification: they may
295 bind to a legacy application, to a service, be queued, enter a message workflow process, be expected by
296 an already-running business process, be batched for delayed processing, be routed over an Enterprise
297 Service Bus before reaching their consumer application, or be dispatched based on header data or
298 payload data, etc.

299 It is becoming critical for broad adoption among all partners – large or small - of a supply-chain, to handle
300 differences in message flow capacity, intermittent connectivity, lack of static IP addresses or firewall
301 restrictions. Such new capabilities played an important role in the motivation that led to ebMS 3.0, along
302 with the need to integrate and profile the emerging SOAP-based QoS-supporting standards. The message
303 header profiling that provided, in ebMS 2.0, a standard business-level header, has also been extended to
304 better address the diversity of back-end binding models, as well as the emerging trend in business activity
305 monitoring, the eBusiness side of which a message handler should be able to support.

306 The ebXML messaging framework is not a restrictive one: business messages, identified as the 'payloads'
307 of ebXML messages, are not limited to XML documents. Traditional EDI formats may also be transported
308 by ebMS. These payloads can take any digital form—XML, ASC X12, HL7, AIAG E5, database tables,
309 binary image files, etc. Multiple payloads, possibly of different MIME types, can be transported in a single
310 ebMS message. An objective of ebXML Messaging protocol is to be capable of being carried over any
311 available transfer protocol. This version of the specification provides bindings to HTTP and SMTP, but
312 other protocols to which SOAP may bind can also be used. The choice of an XML framework rather
313 reflects confidence in a growing XML-based Web infrastructure and development tools infrastructure, the
314 components of which can be leveraged and reused by developers.

315

1.2. Scope

316 The ebXML infrastructure is composed of several independent, but related, components. Some
317 references and bindings to other ebXML specifications in this document should be interpreted as aids to
318 integration, rather than as a requirement to integrate or to use in combination. For example, ebMS may
319 refer to the [ebCPPA] specification, rather than require its use. The ebMS relies on a concept of
320 "Agreement", the concrete representation of which (e.g. CPA or other configuration information) is left for
321 implementers to decide.

317 The ebMS defines messaging functions, protocol and envelope intended to operate over SOAP (SOAP
318 1.1 or SOAP 1.2, and SOAP with Attachments). Binding to lower transport layers such as HTTP and
319 SMTP relies on standard SOAP bindings when these exist, and ebMS only specifies some complement to
320 these, as required.

321 This document, Part 1: Core Features, supports networking topologies in which there are limitations on
322 initiating message transfer, but with only a point-to-point MSH topology, in which no intermediaries are
323 present. A forthcoming Part 2, containing Advanced Features, may take into account topologies that
324 contain intermediaries (e.g. hub, multi-hop), as well as those in which the ultimate MSH acts as a SOAP
325 intermediary.

326 This version of ebMS leverages established SOAP-based specifications that handle quality of service in
327 the domains of reliability and security. The ebMS specification defines how these are composed in the
328 ebMS context. The design of this composition takes into account the reuse of existing implementations of

329 these standards, not just the reuse of these standards themselves.

330 The concept for an ebMS implementation is of an ebXML Messaging Service Handler (MSH), that is
331 abstractly defined as implementing the specified messaging functions. Any interface to the MSH is out of
332 scope of this specification. Although it is clearly helpful in many cases to define a standard API, such an
333 interface should not exclude other ways applications may want to interact with an MSH. Such an interface
334 definition should rather belong to an implementation guideline companion document. An implementation
335 of this specification could be delivered as a wholly independent software component or as an embedded
336 component of a larger system.

337 **1.3. Web Services and Their Role in an eBusiness Messaging** 338 **Framework**

339 A major design choice in ebMS 3, is the specification of the MSH and its associated processing rules
340 using Web Services standards. The intent is to make use of other relevant Web Services specifications
341 that fulfill certain messaging requirements, and build upon that base by adding what is necessary for a
342 complete and coherent eBusiness messaging service. ebMS 3 brings this all together into a single,
343 coherent framework.

344 In order to achieve this, message security and reliability requirements are met through the use of other
345 Web Services standards and their implementations. The message SOAP body has been freed for
346 business payload. The ebMS header is just a SOAP extension among others. As a result, ebMS 3 is
347 significantly more compliant than ebMS 2 with the SOAP processing model, and apt at composing Web
348 services standards that are defined as SOAP extensions. Compliance of ebMS 3 implementations with the
349 latest version of WS-I profiles - once approved as final material by the organization - will be addressed in
350 the definition of conformance profiles that are adjunct to this specification (see Appendix G).

351 Compliance with Web services standards does not remove the rationale behind an Internet-based
352 messaging middleware. Often, document-centric eBusiness and eGovernment exchanges need to clearly
353 dissociate messaging functions from the way these messages are consumed on the back-end. Such
354 consumption may take place according to various models, as mentioned in 1.1. The use of [SOAP]
355 message header elements that represent standard business metadata (user or company ID, business
356 conversation, business service and action, etc.), is a key feature for supporting a decoupled binding with
357 back-end business processes. At the same time, experience has demonstrated that the messaging layer
358 must be more supportive of business transactions: messages are parts of basic choreographies that map
359 to higher-level business exchanges between partners. To this end, ebMS 3 supports a notion of message
360 exchange pattern (MEP) the properties of which (reliability, security, binding to underlying transport, error
361 handling, and other quality of service aspects such as timing, etc.) are controlled in a contract-based
362 manner by the message producer and consumer layers.

363 **1.4. Caveats and Assumptions**

364 The target audience for this specification is the community of software developers who will implement the
365 ebXML Messaging Service.

366 It is assumed the reader has an understanding of communications protocols, MIME, XML, SOAP, SOAP
367 Messages with Attachments and security technologies.

368 All examples are to be considered non-normative. If inconsistencies exist between the specification and
369 the examples, the specification supersedes the examples.

370 Implementers are strongly advised to read and understand the Collaboration Protocol Profile & Agreement
371 [ebCPPA] specification and its implications prior to implementation.

372 This specification presents some alternatives regarding underlying specifications (e.g. SOAP 1.1/1.2,
373 WSS1.0/1.1, and Web Services specifications that support the reliability function). This does not imply that
374 a conforming implementation must support them all, nor that it is free to support any option. The definition
375 of conformance profiles - out of scope for this document, and to be described in an adjunct OASIS
376 document - will complement this specification by asserting which option(s) must be supported in order to
377 claim support for a particular conformance profile. Conformance to compatible profiles is a prerequisite to
378 interoperability. See Appendix G for more details on conformance profiles.

379 1.5. General Rules for Normative Interpretation

380 The key words *MUST*, *MUST NOT*, *REQUIRED*, *SHALL*, *SHALL NOT*, *SHOULD*, *SHOULD NOT*,
381 *RECOMMENDED*, *MAY*, and *OPTIONAL* in this document are to be interpreted as described in
382 [RFC2119].

383 For any given module described in this specification, an implementation **MUST** satisfy **ALL** of the following
384 conditions to be considered a conforming implementation of that module:

- 385 1. It supports all the mandatory syntax, features and behavior (as identified by the [RFC2119] key
386 words **MUST**, **MUST NOT**, **REQUIRED**, **SHALL** and **SHALL NOT**) defined in the section that
387 specifies that module.
- 388 2. When the keywords **MUST**, **SHALL**, or **REQUIRED** are used to qualify a feature, support for this
389 feature--either message content or implementation behavior--is mandatory in an implementation
390 with a conformance profile that requires this feature.
- 391 3. It complies with the following interpretation of the keywords **OPTIONAL** and **MAY**: When these
392 keywords apply to the behavior of the implementation, the implementation is free to support these
393 behaviors or not, as meant in [RFC2119]. When these keywords apply to message contents
394 relevant to a module of features, a conforming implementation of such a module **MUST** be
395 capable of processing these optional message contents according to the described ebXML
396 semantics.
- 397 4. If it has implemented optional syntax, features and/or behavior defined in this specification, it
398 **MUST** be capable of interoperating with another implementation that has not implemented the
399 optional syntax, features and/or behavior. It **MUST** be capable of processing the prescribed failure
400 mechanism for those optional features it has chosen to implement.
- 401 5. It is capable of interoperating with another implementation that has chosen to implement optional
402 syntax, features and/or behavior, defined in this specification, it has chosen not to implement.
403 Handling of unsupported features **SHALL** be implemented in accordance with the prescribed
404 failure mechanism defined for the feature.

405 1.6. XML Notation

406 When describing concrete XML schemas and information items, this specification uses a convention in
407 which each XML element or attribute is identified using abbreviated [XPath] notation (e.g.,
408 /x:MyHeader/x:SomeProperty/@attribute).

409 1.7. Namespace Prefixes

410 This table maps various prefixes that appear in XML examples to their intended corresponding
411 namespaces.

Prefix	Namespace
S11	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/
S12	http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope
ds	http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#
eb	http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
enc	http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#
wsr	http://docs.oasis-open.org/wsr/2004/06/ws-reliability-1.1.xsd
wsrx	http://docs.oasis-open.org/ws-rx/wsr/200702
wsse	http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd
wsu	http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-utility-1.0.xsd
ebbp sig	http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-bp/ebbp-signals-2.0

412

413 1.8. Example Domains

414 Hostnames used in the examples are fictitious, and conform to [RFC2606]. The example.org domain is
415 intended to refer generically to a relevant industry standards organization, while the example.com domain
416 represents a participant in a message exchange (whether commercial, government, or other entity).

417 1.9. Normative References

- 418 [HTTP11] R. Fielding, et al, *Hypertext Transfer Protocol -- HTTP/1.1*, 1999.
419 <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2616.txt>>
- 420 [IANAMEDIA] Various, *MIME Media Types*, Various. <<http://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/>>
- 421 [RFC2045] N Freed, et al, *Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Part One: Format of*
422 *Internet Message Bodies*, 1996. <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2045.txt>>
- 423 [RFC2119] S. Bradner, *Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels*, 1997.
424 <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt>>
- 425 [RFC2387] E. Levinson, *The MIME Multipart/Related Content-type*, 1998.
426 <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2387.txt>>
- 427 [RFC2392] E. Levinson, *Content-ID and Message-ID Uniform Resource Locators*, 1998.
428 <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2392.txt>>
- 429 [RFC2396] T. Berners-Lee, et al, *Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI): Generic Syntax*, 1998.
430 <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2396.txt>>
- 431 [RFC2822] P. Resnick, ed., *Internet Message Format*, 2001. <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2822.txt>>
- 432 [SMTP] J. Klensin, ed., *Simple Mail Transfer Protocol*, 2001. <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2821.txt>>
- 433 [SOAP11] D. Box, et al, *Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1*, 2000.
434 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/NOTE-SOAP-20000508/>>
- 435 [SOAP12] M. Gudgin, et al, *SOAP Version 1.2 Part 1: Messaging Framework*, 2003.
436 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-part1/>>
- 437 [SOAPATTACH] J. Barton, et al, *SOAP Messages with Attachments*, 2000.
438 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/SOAP-attachments>>
- 439 [UTF8] F. Yergeau, *UTF-8, a transformation format of ISO 10646*, 1998.
440 <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2279.txt>>
- 441 [WSIAP10] Chris Ferris, et al, eds, *Attachments Profile Version 1.0*, 2004. <<http://www.wsi.org/Profiles/AttachmentsProfile-1.0-2004-08-24.html>>
- 442
- 443 [WSIBSP10] Abbie Barbir, et al, eds, *Basic Security Profile Version 1.0*, 2005. <<http://www.wsi.org/Profiles/BasicSecurityProfile-1.0.html>>
- 444
- 445 [WSR11] Kazunori Iwasa, et al, eds, *WS-Reliability 1.1*, 2004. <http://docs.oasis-open.org/wsrn/ws-reliability/v1.1/wsrn-ws_reliability-1.1-spec-os.pdf>
- 446
- 447 [WSRM11] D. Davis, et al, eds, *Web Services Reliable Messaging (WS-ReliableMessaging)*
448 *Version 1.1*, 2007. <<http://docs.oasis-open.org/ws-rx/wsrn/v1.1/wsrn.pdf>>
- 449 [WSRMP11] D. Davis, et al, eds, *Web Services Reliable Messaging Policy (WS-RM Policy) Version*
450 *1.1*, 2007. <<http://docs.oasis-open.org/ws-rx/wsrmp/v1.1/wsrmp.pdf>>
- 451 [WSS10] Anthony Nadalin, et al, eds., *Web Services Security: SOAP Message Security 1.0*,
452 2004. <[http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-soap-message-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-soap-message-security-1.0.pdf)
453 [security-1.0.pdf](http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-soap-message-security-1.0.pdf)>
- 454 [WSS10-USER] P. Hallam-Baker, et al, eds., *Web Services Security UsernameToken Profile 1.0*, 2004.
455 <<http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/>>
- 456 [WSS10-X509] P. Hallam-Baker, et al, eds., *Web Services Security X.509 Certificate Token Profile*,
457 2004. <<http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/>>
- 458 [WSS11] Anthony Nadalin, et al, eds., *Web Services Security: SOAP Message Security 1.1*,
459 2005. <<http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/v1.1/>>
- 460 [WSS11-USER] A. Nadalin, et al, eds., *Web Services Security UsernameToken Profile 1.1*, 2006.
461 <<http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/v1.1/>>

- 462 [WSS11-X509] A. Nadalin, et al, eds., *Web Services Security X.509 Certificate Token Profile 1.1*, 2006.
463 <<http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/v1.1/>>
- 464 [XML10] Tim Bray, et al, eds., *Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0 (Third Edition)*, 2004.
465 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/2004/REC-xml-20040204/>>
- 466 [XMLDSIG] Donald Eastlake, et al, eds, *XML-Signature Syntax and Processing*, 2002.
467 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlsig-core/>>
- 468 [XMLENC] D. Eastlake, et al, *XML Encryption Syntax and Processing*, 2002.
469 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlenc-core/>>
- 470 [XMLNS] Tim Bray, et al, eds, *Namespaces in XML*, 1999. <<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml-names/>>
- 471
- 472 [XMLSCHEMA] Henry S. Thompson, et al, eds., *XML Schema Part 1: Structures Second Edition*, 2004.
473 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/>>
- 474 [XPATH] James Clark, et al, eds., *XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0*, 1999.
475 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath>>
476

477 **1.10. Non-Normative References**

- 478 [ebBP-SIG] OASIS ebXML Business Process TC, *ebXML Business Signals Schema*, 2006.
479 <<http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-bp/ebbp-signals-2.0>>
- 480 [ebCPPA] OASIS ebXML Collaboration Protocol Profile and Agreement Technical Committee,
481 *Collaboration-Protocol Profile and Agreement Specification Version 2.0*, 2002.
482 <<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/204/ebcpp-2.0.pdf>>
- 483 [ebCPPA21] OASIS ebXML Collaboration Protocol Profile and Agreement Technical Committee,
484 *Collaboration-Protocol Profile and Agreement Specification Version 2.1*, 2005.
485 <[http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/12208/ebcpp-2.1-april-5-2005-](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/12208/ebcpp-2.1-april-5-2005-draft.doc)
486 [draft.doc](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/12208/ebcpp-2.1-april-5-2005-draft.doc)>
- 487 [ebRISK] ebXML Security Team, *ebXML Technical Architecture Risk Assessment v1.0*, 2001.
488 <<http://ebxml.org/specs/secRISK.pdf>>
- 489 [ISO6523] Unknown, *Identification of organization identification schemes*, 1998.
490 <<http://www.iso.org/iso/en/CatalogueDetailPage.CatalogueDetail?CSNUMBER=25773>>
- 491 [ISO9735] Unknown, *EDIFACT*, 1988.
492 <<http://www.iso.ch/iso/en/CatalogueDetailPage.CatalogueDetail?CSNUMBER=17592>>
- 493 [QAFW] Karl Dubost, et al, eds, *QA Framework: Specification Guidelines*, 2005.
494 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/qaframe-spec/>>
- 495 [RFC2246] T. Dierks, et al, *The TLS Protocol Version 1.0*, 1999. <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2246.txt>>
- 496 [RFC2402] S. Kent, et al, *IP Authentication Header*, 1998. <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2402.txt>>
- 497 [RFC2606] D. Eastlake, et al, *Reserved Top Level DNS Names*, 1999.
498 <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2606.txt>>
- 499 [RFC2617] J. Franks, et al, *HTTP Authentication: Basic and Digest Access Authentication*, 1999.
500 <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2617.txt>>
- 501 [RFC3023] M. Murata, et al, *XML Media Types*, 2001. <<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3023.txt>>
- 502 [SOAPEMAIL] H. M. Mountain, et al, *SOAP Version 1.2 Email Binding*, 2002.
503 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-email>>
- 504 [WSPOLICY] A. Vadamuthu, et al, eds, *Web Services Policy 1.5: Framework*, 2007.
505 <<http://www.w3.org/TR/ws-policy/>>
- 506 [WSSECPOL] A. Nadalin, et al, eds, *WS-SecurityPolicy 1.2*, 2007. <[http://docs.oasis-open.org/ws-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/ws-sx/ws-securitypolicy/v1.2/ws-securitypolicy.pdf)
507 [sx/ws-securitypolicy/v1.2/ws-securitypolicy.pdf](http://docs.oasis-open.org/ws-sx/ws-securitypolicy/v1.2/ws-securitypolicy.pdf)>
508

509 2. Messaging Model

510 2.1. Terminology and Concepts

511 This section defines the messaging model and its main concepts, along with the related terminology in
512 use throughout the specification.

513 2.1.1. Components of the Model

514 The ebMS messaging model assumes the following components:

- 515 • **ebMS MSH (Messaging Service Handler)**: An entity that is able to generate or process
516 messages that conform to this specification, and to act in at least one of two ebMS roles defined
517 below in Section 2.1.3: Sending and Receiving. In terms of SOAP processing, an MSH is either a
518 SOAP processor or a chain of SOAP processors. In either case, an MSH must be able to
519 understand the eb:Messaging header (qualified with the ebMS namespace).
- 520 • **Producer (or Message Producer)**: An entity that interacts with a Sending MSH (i.e. an MSH in
521 the Sending role) to initiate the sending of a user message. Some examples are: an application, a
522 queuing system, another SOAP processor (though not another MSH).
- 523 • **Consumer (or Message Consumer)**: An entity that interacts with a Receiving MSH (i.e. an MSH
524 in the Receiving role) to consume data from a received user message. Some examples are: an
525 application, a queuing system, another SOAP processor.

526 Figure 1 shows the entities and operations involved in a message exchange.

527 Notes:

528 In all figures, the arrows do not represent control flow, i.e. they do not represent a
529 component invoking an operation on another component. They only represent data
530 transfer under the control of an operation which may be implemented in either
531 component.

532 Producer and Consumer are always MSH endpoints, and Submit and Deliver operations
533 occur at the endpoints only once per message lifetime. Any actions performed by an
534 intermediary will be defined in different terms.

535

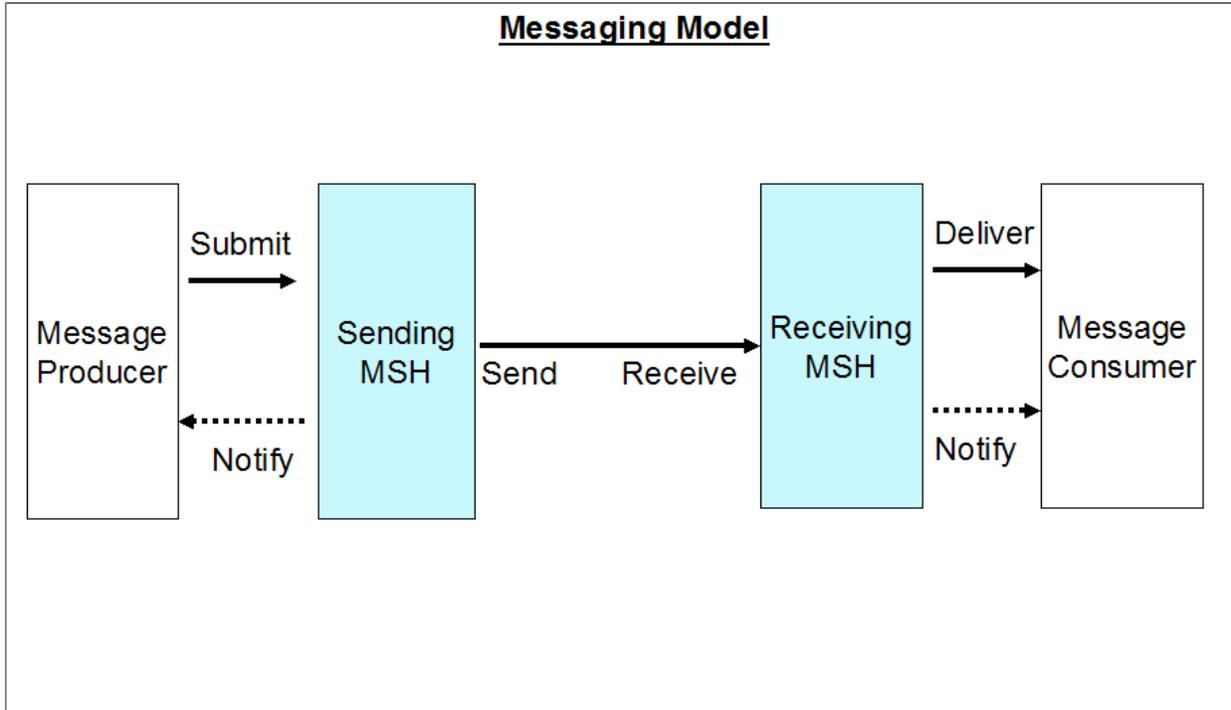


Figure 1: Entities of the Messaging Model and Their Interactions

536 **2.1.2. Message Terminology**

537 An **ebMS Message** is a SOAP message that contains SOAP header(s) qualified with the ebMS
 538 namespace, and that conforms to this specification.

539 An **ebMS Message Unit** is a logical unit of data that is a subset of an ebMS Message. There are two
 540 types of Message Units:

- 541 • an **ebMS User Message Unit**, which is represented by the XML infoset
 542 eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage, together with any referenced payload items. This is the part of
 543 the ebMS message that is submitted by a Producer (via Submit operation) and that is subject to
 544 delivery to a Consumer.
- 545 • an **ebMS Signal Message Unit**, represented by the XML infoset
 546 eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage. Its role is to activate a specific function in the Receiving MSH. It
 547 is not intended to be delivered to a message Consumer.

548 An **ebMS User Message** is an ebMS message that contains a User Message unit (in other words, it
 549 contains an eb:UserMessage element as a child of eb:Messaging).

550 An **ebMS Signal Message** is an ebMS message that contains a Signal Message unit. A Signal Message
 551 that contains an eb:PullRequest element is also called a Pull Signal Message.

552 An ebMS Message may contain both a User Message Unit and a Signal Message Unit. In that case it is
 553 both a Signal Message and a User Message.

554 **2.1.3. Messaging Roles**

555 The Messaging Model assumes the following roles for an MSH:

- 556 • **Sending:** When an MSH acts in the Sending role, it performs the functions associated with
 557 generating an ebMS user message and sending this message to another MSH. The abstract
 558 operations Submit, Send and Notify are supported by this role. (Note that even in a Sending role,
 559 an MSH MAY be required to receive and process some types of Signal Messages, depending on
 560 the conformance profile in use.)
- 561 • **Receiving:** An MSH acting in the Receiving role performs the functions associated with the
 562 receiving and processing of an ebMS user message. The abstract operations Receive, Deliver

563 and Notify are supported by this role. (Note that even in a Receiving role, an MSH MAY be
564 required to generate and send ebMS Signal Messages related to the reception of messages,
565 such as error messages or PullRequest signals.)

566 The transmission of an ebMS user message requires a pair of Sending and Receiving MSHs. Note that
567 these roles are defined as only relevant to ebMS user messages, as are the abstract operations below.

568 2.1.4. Abstract Messaging Operations

569 An ebMS MSH supports the following abstract operations, depending on which role it is operating in:

- 570 • **Submit:** This operation transfers enough data from the producer to the Sending MSH to generate
571 an ebMS User Message Unit.
- 572 • **Deliver:** This operation makes data of a previously received (via Receive operation) ebMS User
573 Message Unit available to the Consumer.
- 574 • **Notify:** This operation notifies either a Producer or a Consumer about the status of a previously
575 submitted or received ebMS User Message Unit, or about general MSH status.
- 576 • **Send:** This operation initiates the transfer of an ebMS user message from the Sending MSH to
577 the Receiving MSH, after all headers intended for the Receiving MSH have been added (including
578 security and/or reliability, as required).
- 579 • **Receive:** This operation completes the transfer of an ebMS user message from the Sending MSH
580 to the Receiving MSH. A successful reception means that a contained User Message Unit is now
581 available for further processing by the Receiving MSH.

582 2.2. Message Exchange Patterns

583 This section introduces the notion of an ebMS Message Exchange Pattern (MEP), and how it relates to
584 SOAP MEPs. Such ebMS MEPs represent atomic units of choreography, i.e. different styles of exchange
585 as required by connectivity constraints or application requirements.

586 2.2.1. Rationale

587 Two communicating partners may agree to conduct business transactions as message sequences that
588 follow well defined patterns, or Message Exchange Patterns (MEP). Enforcing these patterns is usually
589 done above the messaging layer. However it has proved useful to support some aspects of such MEPs in
590 the messaging layer. In particular:

- 591 • The correlation between messages, when expressed directly via a referencing mechanism that
592 appears in the message header, allows for efficient monitoring and enforcement of MEPs.
- 593 • As an MSH has to bind messages to the transport protocol, these binding requirements may be
594 better expressed and controlled at MEP level. For example, different messages of the same MEP
595 (such as a request and a response) may be required to bind differently to the transport.

596 An ebMS MEP represents the part of such exchange patterns that is controlled and implemented by an
597 MSH, thus making an abstraction of the business semantics. Although the notion of MEP was not
598 explicitly supported by ebMS 2.0, it can be noted that it provided some informal support for MEPs, such as
599 message referencing (RefToMessageId) and the SyncReply element that controls the use of the back-
600 channel of the underlying protocol. In the following, the acronym "MEP" implicitly means ebMS MEP,
601 unless otherwise qualified.

602 The goal of this specification is to introduce a model for ebMS MEPs, rather than a formal representation
603 of them. This model is the basis for partners agreeing to which MEPs their exchanges will conform. Such
604 agreements are manifested in Processing Modes, or P-Modes, the representation of which is outside the
605 scope of this specification. The P-Mode also defines which message profile is associated with which MEP,
606 and the role it plays in this MEP. Processing Modes are described in detail in Section 4.

607 2.2.2. General Definition

608 An **ebMS MEP** defines a typical choreography of ebMS User Messages which are all related through the

609 use of the referencing feature (RefToMessageId). Each message of an MEP instance refers to a previous
610 message of the same instance, unless it is the first one to occur. Messages are associated with a label
611 (e.g. "request", "reply") that precisely identifies their direction between the parties involved and their role in
612 the choreography.

613 Note: Because RefToMessageId more accurately defines a referencing between User
614 Message Units than between User Messages (SOAP messages), MEPs are preferably
615 defined here as exchanges of Message Units, rather than of ebMS Messages.

616 Two MEPs are defined in this specification, not exclusive of others:

- 617 • The **One-Way MEP** which governs the exchange of a single User Message Unit unrelated to
618 other User Messages. Its label is "oneway" and is identified by the URI
619 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/oneWay> .
- 620 • The **Two-Way MEP** which governs the exchange of two User Message Units in opposite
621 directions, the first one to occur is labeled "request", the other one "reply". In an actual instance,
622 the "reply" must reference the "request" using eb:RefToMessageId. This MEP is identified by the
623 URI
624 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/twoWay> .

625 The MEP definitions are primarily concerned with the transfer of ebMS User Message Units. Instances of
626 such MEPs may involve or cause the transfer of additional messages or the piggy-backing of additional
627 elements (e.g. ebMS signal messages or units such as errors, receipts, pull requests, and low-level
628 Acknowledgments when using reliability), but these are not taken into account in the MEP definition.
629 Instead, the different ways these additions can be associated with the MEPs defined here, are considered
630 as part of the execution mode of the MEP, which is controlled by some agreement/configuration external
631 to the MEP definition (see P-Modes in Section 4). Some extra messages (Signal messages) may also be
632 mandated by the binding of an ebMS MEP (see channel-binding), but are not relevant to the ebMS MEP
633 definition itself.

634 MEP definitions in this document are restricted to exchanges between two MSHs.

635 **2.2.3. MEP Bindings**

636 The previous definition of ebMS MEP is quite abstract, and ignores any binding consideration to the
637 transport protocol. This is intentional, so that application-level MEPs can be mapped to ebMS MEPs
638 independently from the transport protocol to be used. In addition to agreeing on MEP usage, the following
639 notions of MEP bindings should be subject to agreements between partners:

- 640 • An **ebMS MEP Transport Channel Binding** defines how the MEP maps to the channels allowed
641 by the underlying transport protocol, while making an abstraction of this underlying transport. In
642 case of a two-way transport, the transport channel binding defines whether each message of the
643 MEP maps to the fore-channel (or first leg) or back-channel (second leg). It also tells if an ebMS
644 Signal is needed to initiate the transfer - e.g. by pulling - and which one. Appendix E shows
645 possible options for combining headers supporting reliable messaging as well as error reporting,
646 when binding basic ebMS MEPs to a two-way protocol such as HTTP. The Appendix also shows
647 how these combinations can be controlled with P-Mode parameters.
- 648 • An **ebMS MEP Transport Protocol Binding** defines further how an MEP transport channel
649 binding is implemented over a specific underlying transport protocol such as HTTP or SMTP. For
650 example, an HTTP transport protocol binding will define the usage of HTTP headers and methods
651 for each message. A transport protocol binding usually relies on standard SOAP bindings when
652 these exist.

653 A transport channel binding is a critical complement to an MEP, to be agreed on in order for partners to
654 interoperate. The rationale in using different transport channel bindings for an ebMS MEP is to
655 accommodate different connectivity constraints (e.g. firewall restrictions, intermittent availability, non-static
656 IP address) by dictating how each message transfer is initiated over the underlying protocol. Because
657 such connectivity constraints usually exist independently from the details of the transport protocol, the
658 transport channel binding is the right level to address them. The transport channel bindings identified in
659 this specification are:

- 660 • **Push**: maps an MEP User message to the 1st leg of an underlying 2-way transport protocol, or of

661 a 1-way protocol. This binding is identified by the URI
662 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/push> .

- 663 • **Pull**: maps an MEP User message to the second leg of an underlying two-way transport protocol,
664 as a result of an ebMS Pull Signal sent over the first leg. This binding is identified by the URI
665 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/pull> .
- 666 • **Sync**: maps an exchange of two User messages respectively to the first and second legs of a
667 two-way underlying transport protocol. This binding is identified by the URI
668 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/sync> .

669 Notes:

- 670 • An underlying transport protocol qualifies as "two-way" if (a) it guarantees a
671 transport channel for transferring the response of every message (request)
672 initiated by an MSH, back to this MSH without need for explicit addressing
673 information in SOAP headers, and regardless of connectivity restrictions such as
674 inability to accept incoming new connections; and (b) it provides to the MSH
675 initiator of the exchange, some means for correlating the response with the
676 request, without relying on the SOAP header. For example, HTTP qualifies as
677 two-way, but SMTP and FTP do not (although FTP has a notion of session, it
678 does not inherently support the coupling of (b)). The channel offered in (a) is also
679 called "back-channel" in this specification.
- 680 • "Pull" and "Sync" above cannot be used with a one-way underlying protocol.
- 681 • Communicating parties must agree on a transport channel binding: a sending
682 MSH will treat a message submitted for pulling differently from a message
683 submitted for pushing.

684 An MEP that is associated with a particular transport channel binding is also called a transport-channel-
685 bound MEP. A transport-channel-bound MEP is identified by a pair <MEP name / transport-channel-
686 binding name>. For example, a Two-Way ebMS MEP that executes over a single request-response
687 exchange of the underlying transport (e.g. HTTP), is called a **Two-Way/Sync** MEP.

688 A channel-bound MEP has an **Initiating MSH**, or **Initiator**, which is the one that triggers the execution of
689 the MEP. The other MSH is called the **Responding MSH**, or **Responder**. These MSH roles do not
690 change for the duration of the MEP, regardless of the number of messages exchanged and of their
691 direction. Due to endpoint addressing or availability restrictions, some MSHs may be required to act only
692 as initiator, and never as responder.

693 On the wire, the only method by which messages from the same MEP instance are associated, is through
694 a referencing link (RefToMessageId). This referencing is decided above the MSH layer (by the Producer
695 entity). A receiving MSH relies on both this referencing and the interpretation of the P-Mode for
696 associating a message with a specific MEP and for validating this association.

697 2.2.4. Relationship to SOAP MEPs

698 In theory, the transport-channel-bindings previously defined could be expressed in terms of SOAP MEPs
699 instead of channels of the underlying transport protocol. However, the notion of SOAP MEP has only been
700 introduced with SOAP 1.2, and would need to be extended to SOAP 1.1.

701 Also, only the SOAP Request-Response MEP and Response MEP have been formally defined, as of the
702 time this specification was written. A SOAP One-way MEP could also be defined, but how such an MEP
703 may or may not bind to a two-way underlying protocol is yet to be determined.

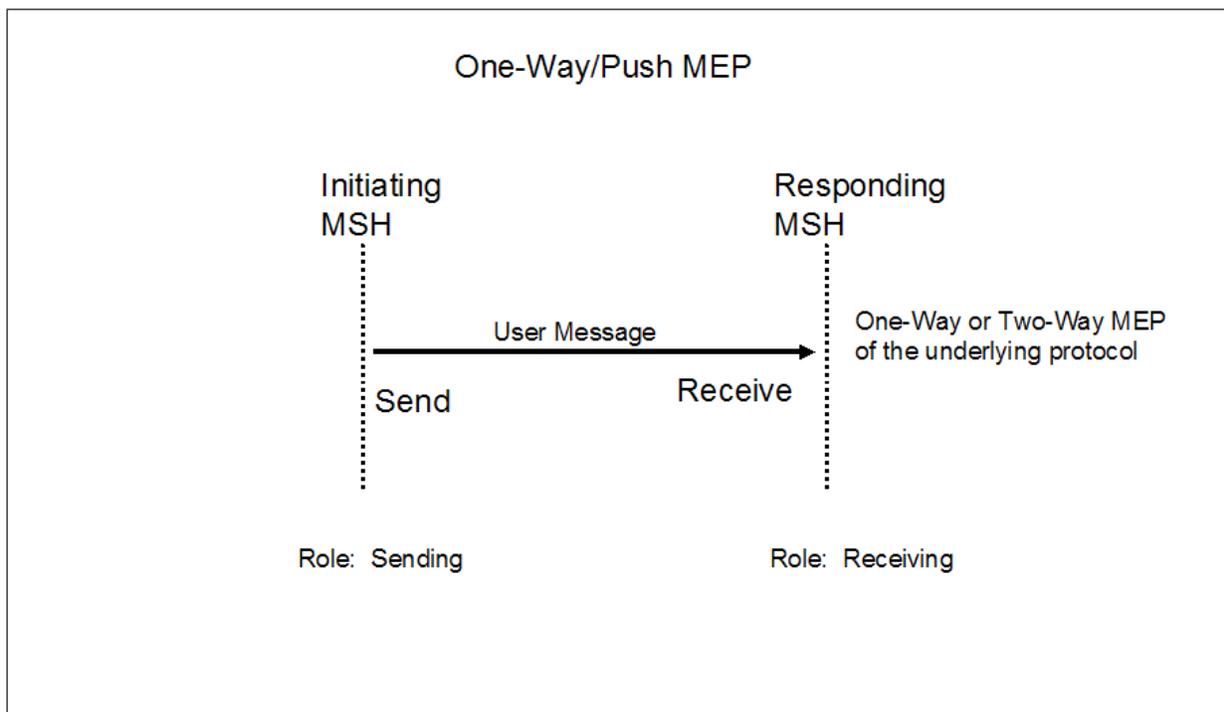
704 Expressing the transport-channel-binding in terms of SOAP MEPs is only helpful if there is a published,
705 non-ambiguous, standard way for these to map to the underlying protocol(s). This is currently only the
706 case for some SOAP MEPs and some transport protocols. Consequently, this specification has chosen
707 to express its transport-channel-bindings directly in terms of how to use the channels of the transport
708 protocol, abstracting such a transport as either "One-Way" or "Two-Way".

709 **2.2.5. The One-Way/Push MEP**

710 This transport-channel-bound MEP involves the transfer of a single ebMS User Message unit (label:
711 "oneway").

712 To conform to this MEP, the ebMS User Message unit that is exchanged **MUST NOT** relate to any other
713 User Message unit (no eb:RefToMessageId element). Figure 2 illustrates the exchange pattern and MSH
714 operations involved in this MEP.

715 In case the One-Way/Push MEP is performed over a Two-way underlying transport
716 protocol, the response message **MAY** carry an ebMS Signal Message, such as an error
717 message, or other SOAP headers. Such an option is controlled by the P-Mode (see
718 Section 4). However, the response message **MUST NOT** carry an ebMS User Message
719 that refers to the request message. If the P-Mode allows Faults to be reported on the
720 Two-way protocol's back-channel, the MEP can be qualified as a **robust** MEP, but is still
721 an ebMS One-Way/Push MEP.



722 *Figure 2: One-Way/Push MEP*

723 **2.2.6. The One-Way/Pull MEP**

724 This transport-channel-bound MEP involves the transfer of a single ebMS User Message unit (label:
725 "oneway"). This MEP is initiated by the Receiving MSH, over a two-way underlying transport protocol. The
726 first leg of the protocol exchange carries a Pull Signal message. The second leg returns the pulled User
727 Message unit. To conform to this MEP the pulled User Message unit **MUST NOT** include an
728 eb:RefToMessageId element. In case no message is available for pulling, an ebMS error signal of severity
729 level "warning" and short description of "EmptyMessagePartitionChannel", as listed in Section 6.7.1,
730 **MUST** be returned over the response leg. Figure 3 illustrates this MEP.

765 3. Message Pulling and Partitioning

766 3.1. Objectives

767 Business partners may experience differences in their ability to handle message flow, intermittent
768 connectivity, lack of static IP addresses or firewall restrictions. In addition, when a message is transferred
769 and successfully acknowledged, the responsibility for its management shifts sides. For these reasons, a
770 receiver may want (a) to retain control over the transfer procedure of the underlying protocol by initiating
771 transfers, and/or (b) to decide which messages it wants to receive first and when. Two features have been
772 introduced in ebMS 3 that support this:

- 773 • Message Pulling
- 774 • Message Partition Channels (MPCs)

775 Message Pulling is defined in an abstract way by the One-Way/Pull ebMS MEP (see Section 2.2.6). This
776 MEP allows an MSH to initiate the transfer of a message as a receiver. When used in combination with
777 the One-Way/Push ebMS MEP, it allows an MSH full control over initiating asynchronous transfers with
778 another MSH in both directions, engaging in a client-server type of interaction with the remote MSH,
779 without any need to open a TCP/IP port to incoming requests. This MEP also supports exchanges with a
780 partner that is intermittently connected: instead of periodically polling for partner presence, a sending MSH
781 will simply wait for the partner MSH to pull its messages.

782 **Example:** *A mobile, occasionally connected device without static IP address and with limited storage*
783 *capability can only initiate requests and receive messages as synchronous responses to these requests.*
784 *The One-Way/Pull MEP allows this device to enable and control the flow of received messages, and to*
785 *adjust it to its own resources.*

786 Message Partition Channels (see Section 3.4) allow for partitioning the flow of messages from an MSH to
787 another MSH into separate flows, so that each one of these flows can be controlled independently by
788 either MSH, in terms of transfer priorities. A Sending MSH MUST be able to determine whether a
789 submitted message should be pulled or pushed, and to which Message Partition Channel (MPC) it must
790 be assigned. Similarly, the Receiving MSH is aware of which MPC(s) should be pulled from, and which
791 ones will be used for push. This knowledge is based on an agreement shared between parties prior to the
792 exchanges, and modeled in this specification as the P-Mode operation set (see Section 4).

793 3.2. Supporting Message Pulling

794 Using Message pulling requires the ability of an MSH to support the One-Way/Pull MEP. The PullRequest
795 signal that initiates this MEP is described in Section 5.2.3.1. Because there is always at least one MPC
796 open between a Sending MSH and a Receiving MSH—the default MPC—the Pull mode can be supported
797 regardless of the ability to support several MPCs.

798 When sending a PullRequest signal, the name of the MPC to pull messages from must be specified (in
799 eb:PullRequest/@mpc attribute), unless the default value is to be assumed.

800 The processing model for a pulled message is as follows, for a typical and successful instance of One-
801 Way/Pull MEP:

802 On Responding MSH side:

- 803 1. Submit: submission of message data to the MSH by the Producer party, intended for the
804 Consumer on the Initiator side. The message is associated with an MPC. If no MPC name is
805 provided by the submitter, or if the MSH implementation has not been provided with a way to
806 determine this association by itself, the default MPC is used. The MEP associated with this
807 message (e.g. as specified by P-Mode.MEP; see Section 4.2) is a One-Way/Pull.

808 On Initiating MSH side:

- 809 2. Sending of a PullRequest signal by the MSH. The PullRequest signal specifies the MPC from
810 which to pull messages.

811 On Responding MSH side:

- 812 3. Reception of the PullRequest signal. For every PullRequest signal received the Responder MSH

813 (acting in Sending role) selects a previously submitted message. It is RECOMMENDED to select
814 messages according to a FIFO policy with respect to the Submit operation. If there is no user
815 message available in the specified MPC for sending, a warning signal with short description:
816 "EmptyMessagePartitionChannel" (see Section 6.7.1) MUST be sent back instead.

817 4. Send: the selected message is sent over the SOAP Response to the PullRequest.

818 **On Initiating MSH side:**

819 5. Receive: the pulled message is available for processing by the MSH. The header @mpc attribute
820 indicates from which MPC it has been pulled, and is the same as the value of @mpc in the
821 corresponding PullRequest signal.

822 6. Deliver: after processing of ebMS headers, delivery of the pulled message data to the Consumer
823 of the MSH.

824 **Example: An example of eb:Messaging header for the PullRequest signal:**

```
825 <S11:Envelope>  
826 <S11:Header>  
827 <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1">  
828 <eb:SignalMessage>  
829 <eb:MessageInfo>  
830 <eb:Timestamp>2006-10-01T10:01:00</eb:Timestamp>  
831 <eb:MessageId>UUID-4@receiver.example.com</eb:MessageId>  
832 </eb:MessageInfo>  
833 <eb:PullRequest mpc="http://sender.example.com/mpc123"/>  
834 </eb:SignalMessage>  
835 </eb:Messaging>  
836 </S11:Header>  
837 <S11:Body/>  
838 </S11:Envelope>
```

839 **Example: An outline of eb:Messaging header for the response to the above PullRequest signal example:**

```
840 <S11:Envelope>  
841 <S11:Header>  
842 <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" >  
843 <eb:UserMessage mpc="http://sender.example.com/mpc123">  
844 <eb:MessageInfo>  
845 <eb:Timestamp>2006-10-01T10:02:00</eb:Timestamp>  
846 <eb:MessageId>UUID-5@sender.example.com</eb:MessageId>  
847 <eb:RefToMessageId>UUID-4@receiver.example.com</eb:RefToMessageId>  
848 </eb:MessageInfo>  
849 <eb:PartyInfo>  
850 ...  
851 </eb:PartyInfo>  
852 <eb:CollaborationInfo>  
853 ...  
854 </eb:CollaborationInfo>  
855 <eb:PayloadInfo>  
856 ...  
857 </eb:PayloadInfo>  
858 </eb:UserMessage>  
859 </eb:Messaging>  
860 </S11:Header>  
861 <S11:Body>  
862 ...  
863 </S11:Body>  
864 </S11:Envelope>
```

865 **3.3. Combining Pulling with Security and Reliability**

866 Reliability of a pulled message is usually associated with the reliability of the corresponding PullRequest
867 signal. The reliability of the One-Way/Pull MEP instance is addressed in Section 8.3.

868 Security for the PullRequest signal is described in details in Section 7.11.

869 **Example: An outline of a secure and reliable eb:Messaging header for the PullRequest signal follows. The**
870 **reliability header used in the example assumes the use of WS-Reliability, and specifies At-Least-Once**
871 **delivery, with an acknowledgment to be returned on the MEP response message:**

```
872 <S11:Envelope>  
873 <S11:Header>  
874 <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" >
```

```

875         <eb:SignalMessage>
876             <eb:MessageInfo>
877                 <eb:Timestamp>2006-10-01T10:01:00</eb:Timestamp>
878                 <eb:MessageId>UUID-4@receiver.example.com</eb:MessageId>
879             </eb:MessageInfo>
880             <eb:PullRequest mpc="http://sender.example.com/mpc123"/>
881         </eb:SignalMessage>
882     </eb:Messaging>
883     <wss:Security>
884         ...
885     </wss:Security>
886     <wsr:Request S11:mustUnderstand="1">
887         ...
888         <ReplyPattern>
889             <Value>Response</Value>
890         </ReplyPattern>
891         <AckRequested/>
892         ...
893     </wsr:Request>
894 </S11:Header>
895 <S11:Body/>
896 </S11:Envelope>

```

897 **Example: An outline of secure and reliable eb:Messaging header for the response to the above**
898 **PullRequest signal:**

```

899 <S11:Envelope>
900 <S11:Header>
901 <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" >
902     <eb:UserMessage mpc="http://sender.example.com/mpc123">
903         <eb:MessageInfo>
904             <eb:Timestamp>2006-10-01T10:02:00</eb:Timestamp>
905             <eb:MessageId>UUID-5@sender.example.com</eb:MessageId>
906             <eb:RefToMessageId>UUID-4@receiver.example.com</eb:RefToMessageId>
907         </eb:MessageInfo>
908         <eb:PartyInfo>
909             ...
910         </eb:PartyInfo>
911         <eb:CollaborationInfo>
912             ...
913         </eb:CollaborationInfo>
914         <eb:PayloadInfo>
915             ...
916         </eb:PayloadInfo>
917     </eb:UserMessage>
918 </eb:Messaging>
919 <wsr:Response S11:mustUnderstand="1">
920     ...
921 </wsr:Response>
922 <wss:Security>
923     ...
924 </wss:Security>
925 </S11:Header>
926 <S11:Body>
927     ...
928 </S11:Body>
929 </S11:Envelope>

```

930 **Note:**
931 In the above example, the reliability header, which assumes the use of WS-Reliability, is a
932 Response element. It contains the reliability acknowledgment for the PullRequest signal.
933 In this example there is no wsr:Request reliability header. A wsr:Request header could be
934 present, in addition to wsr:Response, in case some specific reliability requirement is
935 associated with the pulled message (see Section 8.3).

936 3.4. Message Partition Channels

937 3.4.1. Concept and Purpose

938 Message Partition Channels (MPCs) allow for partitioning the flow of messages from a Sending MSH to a
939 Receiving MSH into several flows that can be controlled separately and consumed differently. They also
940 allow for merging flows from several Sending MSHs, into a unique flow that will be treated as such by a

941 Receiving MSH. In particular, MPCs allow for:

- 942 1. setting transfer priorities: some messages may be transferred with higher priority than others
943 regardless in which order they all have been submitted. For example, when using pulling mode, a
944 Receiving MSH may decide from which MPC to pull messages first, based on business needs
945 and readiness to incur responsibility in managing these messages.
- 946 2. organizing the inflow of messages on receiving side, so that each flow can be consumed in a
947 distinct way, yet without having to filter messages based on various header elements or payload
948 content. The agreement between two parties on when messages are to be transferred and how
949 they are to be consumed may then be reduced to which MPC will be used.

950 Notes:

951 The notion of MPC is abstract from any particular implementation device such as ports or
952 queues: an implementation may choose to implement MPCs using queues and a FIFO
953 policy, though it is not required to.

954 Although MPCs are most obviously beneficial to message pulling operations, MPCs may
955 be used in association with pushed messages as well. The benefits of doing so, listed
956 above, apply to the push case as well.

957 **Example:** *A pair of business partners – a large buyer and a small supplier - have decided to create two*
958 *MPCs for transferring messages sent by the buyer. Urgent messages that require immediate processing*
959 *(e.g. high priority Purchase Orders, and updates to prior Purchase Orders) are assigned to one MPC; and*
960 *less urgent messages (payments, catalog requests, confirmations, acknowledgments of receipts, etc.) are*
961 *assigned to the other MPC. The buyer determines the level of urgency of a posting, which may or may not*
962 *be manifested inside the message. Per an agreement with the buyer, the supplier will pull and process*
963 *first all messages from the "urgent" MPC; then, once that is exhausted, only the messages from the less*
964 *urgent MPC. This way, the low-capacity Receiving MSH (supplier) is able to prioritize the reception of its*
965 *messages, focusing its resources on the most urgent messages and avoiding the overhead and risk in*
966 *managing (persistence, recovery, security) less urgent but important messages that it cannot process in*
967 *the short term.*

968 Any more complex filtering mechanism that requires checking a filter condition on header data, is out of
969 scope of this specification. Such filtering could be implemented in a Sending MSH and/or in a Receiving
970 MSH as a complement to, or instead of, different MPCs. The notion of MPC is a simple and robust
971 solution with low interoperability risk: it allows for partitioning messages based on prior agreement
972 between producer and consumer on which type of message will use which MPC, without a need to
973 communicate and process filter expressions for each message transfer.

974

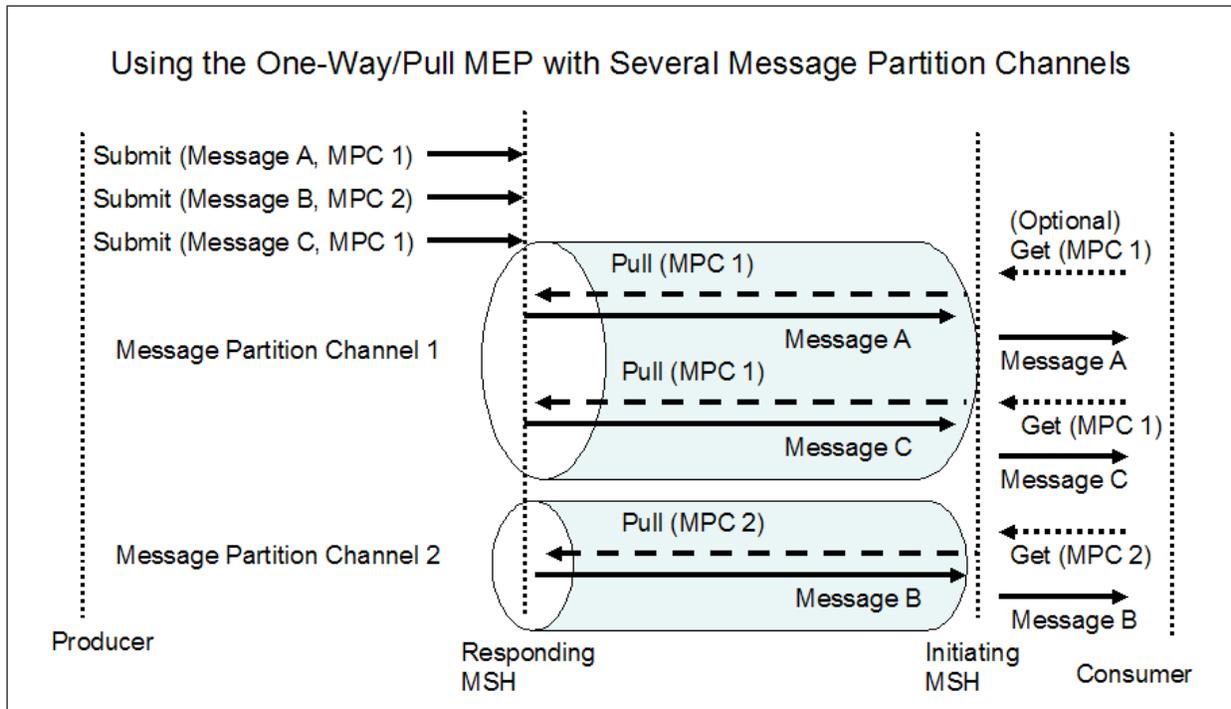


Figure 5: One-Way/Pull with Message Partition Channels

976 Figure 5 illustrates how MPCs and the One-Way/Pull MEP can be used by a Consumer party to control
 977 the order of the messages it wants to receive and process. Messages on MPC 1 are "pulled" in priority by
 978 the Consumer side.

979 There is no requirement for ordering messages in an MPC, unless specified otherwise by the reliability
 980 requirements to which these messages are subjected. The transfer of messages over an MPC is
 981 controlled by:

- 982 • The MEPs in which these messages participate. Messages over the same MPC can either be
 983 pulled or pushed, based on the different MEPs that govern the transfer of these messages.
- 984 • The regular addressing means used for sending messages (e.g. URL of Receiving MSH when
 985 pushing messages). MPCs do not have any routing or addressing capability.

986 Before it is transferred from a Sending MSH to a Receiving MSH, regardless of whether it is pushed or
 987 pulled, a message is always assigned to an MPC. If no explicit assignment is requested (e.g. by the
 988 message Producer at Submit time or per configuration of the MSH), the default MPC name
 989 "http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/defaultMPC" is assigned.

990 3.4.2. Some Use Cases

991 Figure 6 illustrates various cases in using MPCs.

992

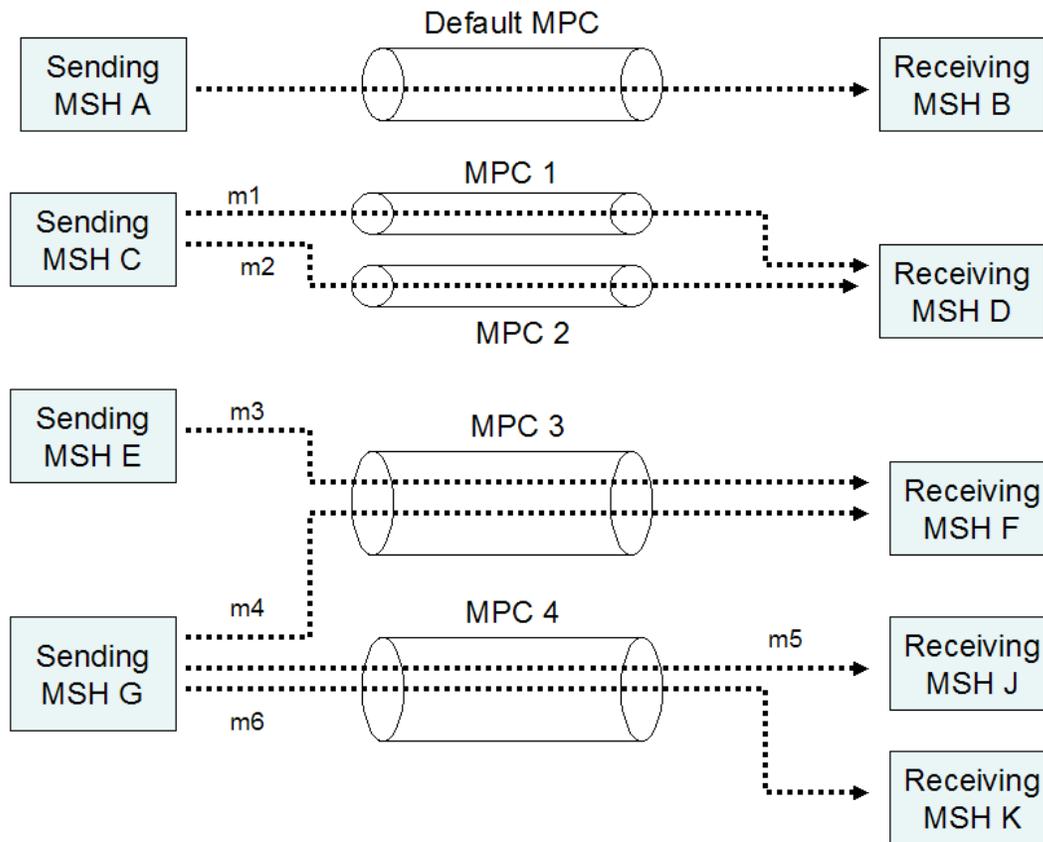


Figure 6: Message Partition Channel Use Cases

993 In the figure above, each arrow represents the transfer of a user message, which could be either pushed
 994 or pulled.

995 Between MSHs A and B, no MPC has been explicitly defined or assigned. All messages transferred from
 996 A to B – whether pushed or pulled – will implicitly use the default MPC.

997 MSHs C and D have been configured to use MPCs 1 and 2 (in addition to the default MPC). Messages
 998 sent may be assigned to either one of these MPCs. In case these messages are pulled, MSH D may
 999 choose from which MPC to pull first.

1000 MPC 3 is shared by two Sending MSHs, E and G. The effect of using this MPC is to define on the
 1001 Receiving MSH F a merged inflow of messages from E and G, which may be presented to the Consumer
 1002 as a single flow. If messages m3 and m4 are pulled, MSH F has control over which MSH from which to
 1003 pull first.

1004 MPC 4 is used by MSH G to send either to MSH J or MSH K. When combined with message pulling, this
 1005 use case allows for various scenarios. For example, the message flow might initially go exclusively from G
 1006 to J. In case MSH J fails, another MSH (K) may immediately take over the message flow without any
 1007 change on the sender side (assuming K is authorized) nor any knowledge by K of where the initial flow
 1008 was intended for. Or, two Receiving MSHs (J and K) that are remote from each other but used by
 1009 equivalent applications may split the processing of messages submitted to the same Sending MSH G.

1010 This may be, for example, two agencies equally qualified to process trouble tickets, indiscriminately pulling
 1011 messages from the same MPC at the pace allowed by their processing capacity. MPC 4 may also be used
 1012 by concurrent, pushed message flows. Using the same MPC does not introduce any dependency between
 1013 the processing of m5 and m6 in J and K, but may be associated with a particular business meaning (i.e. is
 1014 meaningful to Consumers of J and K).

1015 3.4.3. Definition and Usage Requirements

1016 An MPC is a flow of messages from a set of Sending MSHs to a set of Receiving MSHs, in the sense
1017 given in flow networks theory. It is identified by a name—a string of characters—that is assigned to every
1018 message of the flow. For every message it sends or receives, an MSH must be aware of which MPC this
1019 message is assigned to. MPC is a dynamic notion, the elements of which do not need to be fully defined
1020 prior to initiating this flow. For example, additional MSHs (either Sending or Receiving) may join the flow at
1021 any time, assuming they have knowledge of the MPC name, and assuming there is no other reason
1022 preventing them from transferring messages over this MPC (e.g. security).

1023 The association between a user message and an MPC is apparent in the ebMS header of the message
1024 (see Section 5.2). Except for the default MPC, the MPC name must appear in the header of a user
1025 message transferred over this MPC.

1026 Note:

1027 As defined above, an MPC may involve more than a Sending MSH and a Receiving MSH.
1028 In particular, two unrelated pairs of Sending/Receiving MSHs (e.g. in the previous figure,
1029 C and D on the one hand, E and F on the other hand) could transfer messages using the
1030 same MPC name (e.g. MPC 3 in the figure could also be renamed MPC 2). Formally
1031 speaking, all these messages would be transferred over the same MPC. There might be
1032 some business significance in deciding whether two pairs of MSHs that have
1033 unconnected message flows should use the same MPC to transfer these messages, even
1034 though as far as the MSHs are concerned, they will process these two separate sub-flows
1035 of messages independently from each other.

1036 Only user messages may be assigned to MPCs, not signal messages.

1037 A PullRequest signal message always indicates in its header (see Section 5.2.3.1) the MPC on which the
1038 message must be pulled. If no MPC is explicitly identified, the default MPC MUST be pulled from. The
1039 pulled message sent in response MUST have been assigned to the indicated MPC.

1040 The association of a message with an MPC must be done either at Submit time, e.g. requested by the
1041 message Producer; or at any time between Submit and Send, e.g. based on configuration or processing
1042 mode (see Section 4). This is left to the implementation.

1043 Support for assigning messages to MPCs—e.g. by automatically mapping messages submitted by a
1044 Producer to a particular MPC based on some rules, queries or filters—is out of scope of this specification.
1045 Similarly, there is no requirement on what criteria (e.g. query expression, FIFO policy) can be used to
1046 select messages when pulling messages from an MPC. This specification only describes the properties of
1047 MPCs, and how their use affects the message protocol. It does not prescribe a particular way to
1048 implement MPCs or to use them.

1049 A message associated with an MPC could fail to be transferred for various reasons (transport issue,
1050 security, intermediaries, etc.) and therefore could be removed from the MPC at any time. In other words,
1051 there is no additional delivery contract for messages over an MPC, other than that specified by the
1052 reliability agreement.

1053 There is no specific quality of service associated with an MPC. Security and reliability remain associated
1054 with parties or with MSHs, in a way that is orthogonal to MPCs; although an implementation is free to
1055 associate QoS with MPCs as long as this conforms to an agreement between parties.

1056

4. Processing Modes

1057 An MSH is operating—either for sending or receiving messages—with knowledge of some contextual
1058 information that controls the way messages are processed. This contextual information that governs the
1059 processing of a particular message is called Processing Mode (or P-Mode). Because different messages
1060 may be subject to different types of processing, an MSH generally supports several P-Modes.

1061 A P-Mode represents some MSH input data that typically is not provided on a per-message basis, but that
1062 is common to a set of messages exchanged between or among parties. To this extent, the P-Mode may
1063 be interpreted as configuration data for a deployed MSH. On a Sending MSH, together with the
1064 information provided by the application layer for each submitted message, the P-Mode fully determines
1065 the content of the message header. For example, the "security" part of the P-Mode will specify certificates
1066 and keys, as well as which messages will be subject to these. This in turn will determine the content of the
1067 Security header. The set of all P-Modes that are supported by an MSH during operation, is called the P-
1068 Mode operation set of the MSH.

1069 The association of a P-Mode with a message may be based on various criteria, usually dependent on
1070 header data (e.g. Service/Action, Conversation ID, or other message properties). Which security and/or
1071 which reliability protocol and parameters, as well as which MEP is being used when sending a message,
1072 is determined by the P-Mode associated with this message.

1073 A data model for P-Modes is described in Appendix D. Although this specification does not require support
1074 for any particular representation of a P-Mode, a conformance profile for this specification may require
1075 support for a particular representation. An MSH MUST conform the processing of its messages to the
1076 values in the P-Mode associated with this message. The details of which P-Mode parameters must be
1077 supported by an implementation, is governed by the features associated with the conformance profile
1078 claimed by this implementation, i.e. by its profile feature set (see Appendix G on Conformance). An MSH
1079 MUST NOT process a message to normal completion if it has no matching P-Mode in its P-Mode
1080 operation set: i.e. the MSH MUST NOT deliver such a message when in Receiving role, or MUST NOT
1081 send it when in Sending role. When it cannot match a message to a P-Mode, an MSH MUST generate a
1082 ProcessingModeMismatch (EBMS:0010) error.

1083 Note:

1084 It is important to distinguish between Conformance Profiles (Appendix G) and P-Modes. A
1085 conformance profile qualifies an MSH implementation and does not vary with the usage
1086 made of the MSH. A P-Mode qualifies the dynamic exchange and processing of
1087 messages, and is generally user defined. It must be within the capabilities allowed by the
1088 conformance profile claimed by the MSH on which it is deployed.

4.1. Messaging Service Processing Model

1089 Although different P-Modes may apply from one message to the other, the overall processing model
1090 remains the same for all messages. The P-Modes set may be seen as configuring the execution
1091 parameters for the general model.

1093 The ebXML Messaging Service may be conceptually broken down into the following three parts:

- 1094 1. an abstract Service Interface,
- 1095 2. functions provided by the MSH and
- 1096 3. the mapping to underlying transport service(s).

1097 Figure 7 depicts a logical arrangement of the functional modules existing within one possible
1098 implementation of the ebXML Messaging Services architecture. These modules are arranged in a manner
1099 to indicate their inter-relationships and dependencies.

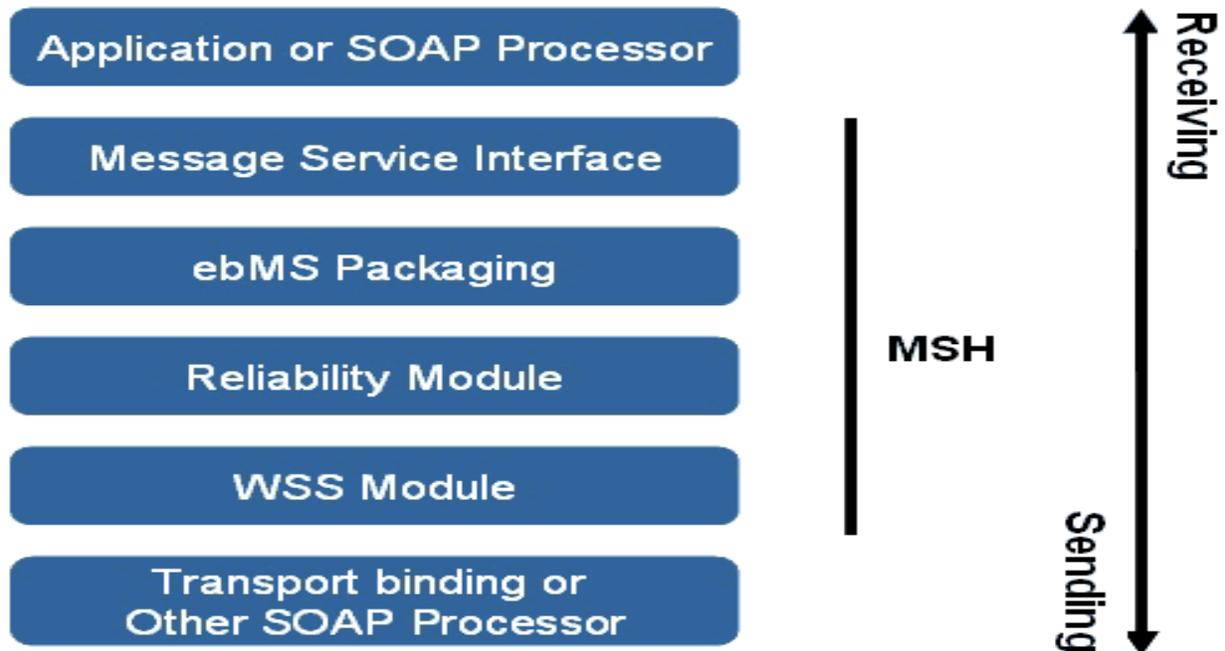


Figure 7: Component Relationships

1100

1101 Following is a description of each module illustrated above. It should be noted that the stack diagram
 1102 above is abstract, and this specification does not mandate that implementations adopt the architecture
 1103 suggested by it, although the processing order shown here is RECOMMENDED, especially in regard to
 1104 Security and Reliability Modules.

- 1105 • **Application or SOAP Processor** - This is where the business logic for a message exchange /
 1106 business process exists.
- 1107 • **Messaging Service Interface** - This is the interface through which messages are channelled
 1108 between the MSH core and the ebXML Application.
- 1109 • **ebMS Packaging** - Handling, (de)enveloping and execution of Payload Services are performed
 1110 by this module.
- 1111 • **Reliable Message Processing** - This module fulfills the Quality of Service requirements for a
 1112 message.
- 1113 • **Web Services Security Processing** - Encryption/decryption of any SOAP message content and
 1114 generation/verification of any digital signatures occurs in this module.
- 1115 • **Transport Protocol Bindings** - These are the actual transport protocol bindings. This
 1116 specification defines bindings for HTTP and SMTP in Appendix C, and supports the addition of
 1117 other protocols.

1118 4.2. Processing Mode Features

1119 The P-Mode is partitioned into functional groups called P-Mode features. Each P-Mode feature covers one
 1120 of the functional areas that is critical to achieving interoperability between two partners: security, reliability,
 1121 transport, business collaboration, error reporting, Message Exchange Patterns (MEPs) and Message
 1122 Partition Channels (MPCs).

1123 The main P-Mode features are here identified by names of the form: P-Mode.<featurename>:

- 1124 • **P-Mode.Protocol**: includes all transport related information that is necessary to achieve

- 1125 transport-level interoperability. This feature determines the type of transport involved (e.g. HTTP,
 1126 SMTP, FTP) between two MSHs, and related configuration parameters. This feature usually treats
 1127 all messages between two MSHs similarly. It also includes information about which SOAP
 1128 version is to be used (SOAP 1.1 or SOAP 1.2).
- 1129 • **P-Mode.Reliability**: includes all reliability contracts, or references to them, that will govern the
 1130 reliability of messages exchanged. This feature determines the content of the reliability headers.
 - 1131 • **P-Mode.Security**: includes all security contracts, or references to them, including the security
 1132 context and related resources (certificates, SAML assertions, etc.) that govern the message
 1133 exchange. This feature determines the content of the wsse:Security header.
 - 1134 • **P-Mode.BusinessInfo**: includes all message-relevant data related to a collaboration between two
 1135 parties. It also indicates which MPCs are to be used by these parties. This feature will
 1136 complement or validate message data that is expected to be provided by the application on a per-
 1137 message basis for these header elements:
 - 1138 • eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo
 - 1139 • eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo
 - 1140 • eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageProperties
 - 1141 • **P-Mode.ErrorHandling**: defines how each ebMS Error type is to be reported by this MSH. E.g. if
 1142 the reporting is done using ebMS signal messages, it defines the address of the destination MSH.
 1143 It also may include the policy chosen for raising ebMS Errors from the errors generated by
 1144 functional modules (Reliability, Security). This P-Mode feature must define reporting mode
 1145 parameters that will allow a Receiving MSH to decide:
 - 1146 • whether an error generated on reception of a message must be returned as response
 1147 over the same SOAP MEP. (e.g. errorHandling.report.asResponse = true/false).
 - 1148 • whether an error generated on reception of a message must be returned to sender or to a
 1149 third party over a new SOAP MEP. (e.g. errorHandling.report.ReceiverErrorsTo =
 1150 <URL>).
 - 1151 • whether the Consumer and/or Producer (e.g.
 1152 errorHandling.Report.ProcessErrorNotifyConsumer) of a message must be notified of an
 1153 error generated on reception of the message.

1154 In this specification, a P-Mode feature is abstractly considered to apply to both sending and receiving
 1155 roles, although implementations may choose to represent only the subset relevant to the role in which they
 1156 operate. A single P-Mode instance is also intended to govern all messages involved in an ebMS MEP.
 1157 (The ebMS MEP and its transport channel binding are attributes of a P-Mode.) Because messages
 1158 involved in an MEP (e.g. request and reply) may use different qualities of service, a single P-Mode may
 1159 use different vectors of values for its parameters, depending on the message in the MEP. An outline of the
 1160 data model for P-Modes is given in Appendix D.

1161 Agreeing on a P-Mode operation set is essential for two parties in order for their MSHs to interoperate. P-
 1162 Modes are the MSH-level expression of a prior agreement between partners. A reference to such an
 1163 agreement may be present in the message header (see eb:AgreementRef element in Section 5.2.2.7).

1164 4.3. Default Features for Processing Mode

1165 In order to facilitate interoperability testing, or during the early phase of a deployment, it may be useful to
 1166 drive message exchanges without relying on user-agreed P-Modes, without interfacing with any
 1167 application, and (initially) without the added complexity of security and reliability features. To this end, a
 1168 default semantics of each P-Mode feature is defined as follows:

- 1169 • **Default P-Mode.MEP**: [http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-
 msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/oneWay](http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-

 1170 msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/oneWay)
- 1171 • **Default P-Mode.MEPbinding**: [http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-
 msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/push](http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-

 1172 msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/push)
- 1173 • **Default P-Mode.Protocol**: HTTP 1.1 transport is assumed, with default configuration (on
 1174 standard port), using SOAP 1.2.
- 1175 • **Default P-Mode.Reliability**: No reliable messaging assumed (no reliability header will be

1176 present).

1177 • **Default P-Mode.Security:** No secure messaging assumed (no security header will be present.)

1178 • **Default P-Mode.BusinessInfo:** In the absence of any application input at message level as well

1179 as for this P-Mode feature, the following default header element values will be used (shown here

1180 for a message sent by an Initiator to a Responder party). Any of these may be overridden by

1181 application input.

1182 • **eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo:** The eb:From element contains a PartyId with value:

1183 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/defaultFrom>

1184 The eb:To element contains a PartyId with value:

1185 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/defaultTo>

1186 • **eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo:** Contains no eb:AgreementRef. The eb:Service

1187 element has the value:

1188 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/service>

1189 The eb:Action element has the value:

1190 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/test>

1191 (Section 5.2.2 details the semantics of these values.)

1192 The eb:ConversationId element has the value: 1.

1193 The default MPC is in use.

1194 • **eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageProperties:** This element is absent.

1195 • **eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo:** This element is absent.

1196 • **Default P-Mode.ErrorHandling:** No reporting via ebMS message is required. The MSH may

1197 handle error reporting in a way that does not involve the partner MSH, such as notification to local

1198 Consumer or Producer.

1199 In the absence of a user-agreed P-Mode feature, it is RECOMMENDED that an MSH operate based on

1200 the above default semantics for this feature except in the following cases:

1201 1. The MSH is designed to conform to this specification along profiles (see Appendix G) that are not

1202 compatible with the default P-Mode feature. For example, such an incompatibility would occur for

1203 the default P-Mode.MEP with a conformance profile that only requires the One-Way/Pull MEP.

1204 2. The MSH has been pre-configured to operate with a non-default P-Mode feature. This would be

1205 the case when an MSH is distributed along with a predefined P-Mode feature, e.g. built-in security.

1206 This amounts to using a user-defined P-Mode feature.

1207 A Sending MSH and a Receiving MSH may use a mix of default and non-default P-Mode features.

1208 **5. Message Packaging**

1209 **5.1. Message Envelope and Message Parts**

1210 **5.1.1. MIME Structure and SOAP Profile**

1211 In the ebMS SOAP header eb:Messaging, the prefix "eb" is an example prefix that corresponds to the
1212 ebMS 3.0 namespace, as defined in Section 1.6. The ebMS Message can be packaged as a plain
1213 [SOAP11] or [SOAP12] message, or within a MIME multipart to allow payloads or attachments to be
1214 included. Because either packaging option can be used, implementations MUST support both multipart
1215 and non-multipart messages.

1216 The ebMS Message MAY contain SOAP extension elements other than the eb:Messaging header block.
1217 For example, header blocks supporting message reliability and message security MAY be produced and
1218 consumed by an MSH in order to fulfill deployment requirements for those features.

1219 An ebMS Message is packaged as a SOAP 1.1 or 1.2 message independent from communications
1220 protocols. When represented as a MIME multipart message envelope, this envelope MUST be structured
1221 in compliance with the SOAP Messages with Attachments [SOAPATTACH] W3C Note, referred to as a
1222 Message Package.

1223 There are two logical sections within the Message Package:

- 1224 • The first section is the ebMS Header (i.e. The eb:Messaging SOAP header block), itself contained
1225 in the SOAP Header.
- 1226 • The second section is the ebMS Payload, which itself comprises two sections: (a) the SOAP Body
1227 element within the SOAP Envelope, and in case of MIME packaging, (b) zero or more additional
1228 MIME parts containing additional application-level payloads. The SOAP Body and MIME parts are
1229 also referred to as ebMS Payload Containers. The SOAP Body is the only payload container that
1230 requires XML-structured content, though non-XML content may be included within an
1231 appropriately typed (binary or otherwise) element inside the Body.

1232 The general structure and composition of an ebMS User Message is described in Figure 8, and a Signal
1233 Message in Figure 9.

1235

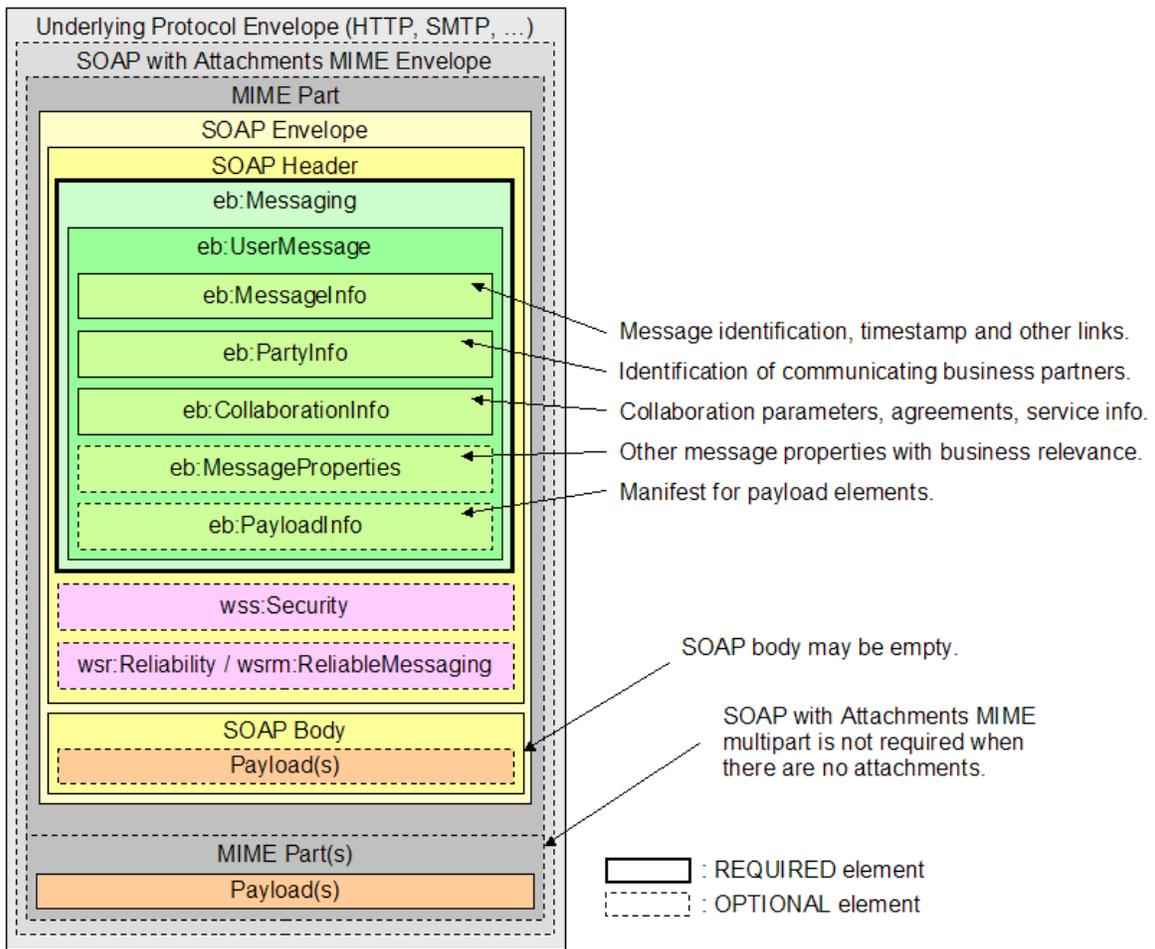


Figure 8: User Message Structure

1236

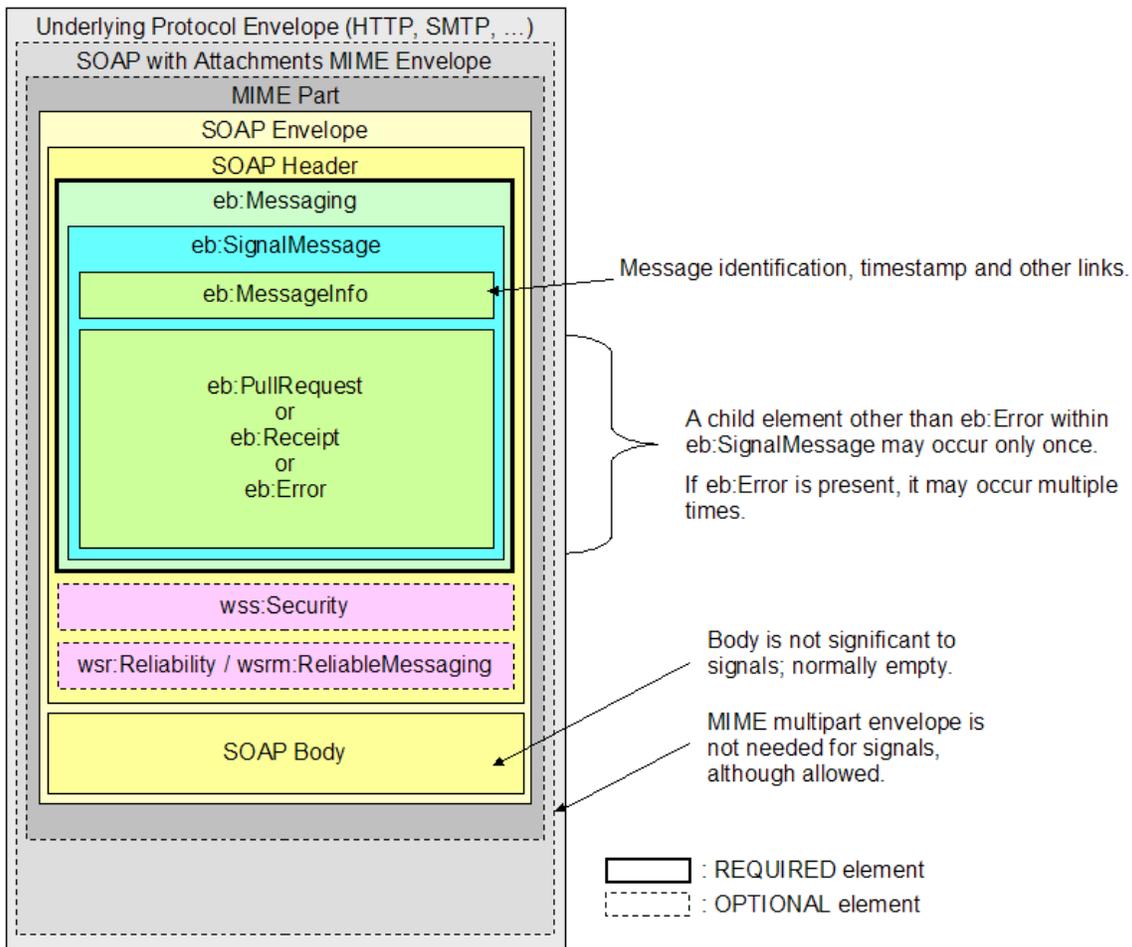


Figure 9: Signal Message Structure

1237 The processing of the SOAP eb:Messaging header block is done according to the SOAP processing
 1238 semantics: an MSH behaves as a SOAP processor or SOAP node that MUST understand this header
 1239 block. Other header blocks (except for those relevant to reliability and security of an ebMS Message)
 1240 are not affected by the ebXML processing. Consequently, it is possible for a Sending MSH implementation
 1241 to generate an ebMS message from a well-formed input SOAP message simply by adding an eb:Messaging
 1242 header; likewise, some Receiving MSH implementation could deliver a well-formed SOAP message as
 1243 output by removing (and processing) the eb:Messaging header.

1244 All MIME headers of the Message Package MUST conform with the SOAP Messages with Attachments
 1245 [SOAPATTACH] W3C Note. In addition, the Content-Type MIME header of the Message Package MUST
 1246 contain a type parameter whose value matches the MIME media type of the MIME body part containing
 1247 the SOAP Envelope document. In accordance with the [SOAP11] specification, the MIME media type of
 1248 the SOAP 1.1 Message has the value "text/xml". It is STRONGLY RECOMMENDED that the initial
 1249 headers contain a Content-ID MIME header structured in accordance with MIME [RFC2045], and in
 1250 addition to the required parameters for the Multipart/Related media type, the start parameter (OPTIONAL
 1251 in MIME Multipart/Related [RFC2387]) be present. This permits more robust error detection. The following
 1252 fragment is an example of the MIME headers for the multipart/related Message Package:

1253 Example 1. MIME Header fragment for the multipart/related Message Package

```
1254 Content-Type: multipart/related; type="text/xml";
1255 boundary="boundaryValue"; start="<messagepackage-123@example.com>"
1256 --boundaryValue
1257 Content-ID: messagepackage-123@example.com
```

1258 Because implementations MUST support non-multipart messages, an ebMS Message with no payload
1259 may be sent either as a plain SOAP message or as a [SOAPATTACH] multipart message with only one
1260 body part (the SOAP Envelope).

1261 **5.1.2. MIME and XML Considerations**

1262 This section contains further MIME- and XML-specific packaging requirements and guidance.

1263 **5.1.2.1. Additional MIME Parameters**

1264 Any MIME part described by this specification MAY contain additional MIME headers in conformance with
1265 the MIME [RFC2045] specification. Implementations MAY ignore any MIME header not defined in this
1266 specification. Implementations MUST ignore any MIME header they do not recognize. For example, an
1267 implementation could include Content-Length in a message. However, a recipient of a message with
1268 Content-Length could ignore it.

1269 **5.1.2.2. Reporting MIME Errors**

1270 If a MIME error is detected in the Message Package then it MUST be reported as specified in SOAP with
1271 Attachments [SOAPATTACH].

1272 **5.1.2.3. XML Prolog**

1273 The SOAP Message's XML Prolog, if present, MAY contain an XML declaration. This specification has
1274 defined no additional comments or processing instructions appearing in the XML prolog. For example:

```
1275 Content-Type: text/xml; charset="UTF-8"  
1276  
1277 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
```

1278 **5.1.2.4. XML Declaration**

1279 The XML declaration MAY be present in a SOAP Message. If present, it MUST contain the version
1280 specification required by the XML Recommendation [XML10] and MAY contain an encoding declaration.
1281 The semantics described below MUST be implemented by a compliant ebXML Message Service.

1282 **5.1.2.5. Encoding Declaration**

1283 If both the encoding declaration and the MIME root part charset parameter are present, the XML prolog for
1284 the SOAP Message SHALL contain the encoding declaration, and SHALL be equivalent to the charset
1285 attribute of the MIME Content-Type of the root part (see Section 5.1.4). If provided, the encoding
1286 declaration MUST NOT contain a value conflicting with the encoding used when creating the SOAP
1287 Message. It is RECOMMENDED that UTF-8 be used when encoding the SOAP Message. If the character
1288 encoding cannot be determined by an XML processor using the rules specified in section 4.3.3 of XML
1289 [XML10], the XML declaration and its contained encoding declaration SHALL be provided in the ebXML
1290 SOAP Header Document. **Note:** The encoding declaration is not required in an XML document according
1291 to XML v1.0 specification [XML10].

1292 **5.1.3. ebXML SOAP Envelope Extension**

1293 In conformance with the [XML10] specification, all extension element content is namespace qualified. A
1294 namespace declaration (xmlns pseudo-attribute) for the ebXML SOAP extension may be included in the
1295 SOAP Envelope or Header element, or directly in the ebXML SOAP extension element.

1296 **5.1.3.1. namespace Pseudo Attribute**

1297 The namespace declaration for the ebXML SOAP Envelope extension (xmlns pseudo attribute) (see
1298 [XMLNS]) has a REQUIRED value of:

```
1299 http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
```

1300 5.1.3.2. xsi:schemaLocation attribute

1301 The SOAP namespace:

```
1302 http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/
```

1303 resolves to a W3C XML Schema specification. It is STRONGLY RECOMMENDED that ebXML MSH
1304 implementations include the XMLSchema-instance namespace qualified schemaLocation attribute in the
1305 SOAP Envelope element, to indicate to validating parsers a location of the schema document that should
1306 be used to validate the document. Failure to include the schemaLocation attribute could prevent XML
1307 schema validation of received messages.

1308 For example:

```
1309 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
1310   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"  
1311   xsi:schemaLocation="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/  
1312     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
1313     <S11:Header/>  
1314     <S11:Body/>  
1315 </S11:Envelope>
```

1316 In addition, the ebXML SOAP Header extension element content MAY be similarly qualified, so as to
1317 identify the location where validating parsers can find the schema document containing the ebXML
1318 namespace-qualified SOAP extension element definition. The ebXML SOAP extension element schema,
1319 found in Appendix A, has been defined using the W3C Recommendation version of the XML Schema
1320 specification [XMLSCHEMA]. The XMLSchema-instance namespace qualified schemaLocation attribute
1321 should include a mapping of the ebXML SOAP Envelope extension namespace to its schema document in
1322 the same element that declares the ebXML SOAP Envelope extensions namespace.

1323 The schemaLocation for the namespace described in Section 5.1.3.1 is:

```
1324 http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd
```

1325 Separate schemaLocation attributes are RECOMMENDED. For example:

```
1326 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
1327   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"  
1328   xsi:schemaLocation="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/  
1329     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
1330   <S11:Header>  
1331     <eb:Messaging xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-  
1332 msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/"  
1333       xsi:schemaLocation=  
1334         "http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/  
1335         http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-  
1336 3_0-200704.xsd">  
1337       <eb:UserMessage>  
1338         <eb:MessageInfo >...</eb:MessageInfo>  
1339         ...  
1340         <eb:PayloadInfo >...</eb:PayloadInfo>  
1341         ...  
1342       </eb:UserMessage>  
1343     </eb:Messaging>  
1344   </S11:Header>  
1345   <S11:Body>  
1346     ...  
1347 </S11:Body>  
1348 </S11:Envelope>
```

1349 5.1.3.3. SOAP Header Element

1350 The SOAP Header element is the first child element of the SOAP Envelope element. It MUST have a
1351 namespace qualifier that matches the SOAP Envelope namespace declaration for the namespace
1352 "http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope".

1353 **5.1.3.4. SOAP Body Element**

1354 The SOAP Body element is the second child element of the SOAP Envelope element. It MUST have a
1355 namespace qualifier that matches the SOAP Envelope namespace declaration for the namespace
1356 "http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/".

1357 Note:

1358 Unlike ebMS v2, ebXML Messaging 3.0 does not define or make use of any elements
1359 within the SOAP Body, which is wholly reserved for user-specified payload data.

1360 **5.1.3.5. ebXML SOAP Extensions**

1361 An ebMS Message extends the SOAP Message with the extension element eb:Messaging, where "eb" is
1362 the namespace prefix for ebMS 3.0.

1363 Other headers that support some aspects of ebMS messaging, such as the security header
1364 (wsse:Security) and reliability headers, may be present. These are not qualified under the ebMS
1365 namespace.

1366 **5.1.4. ebMS Header**

1367 In case of MIME packaging, the root body part of the Message Package is the SOAP message, as defined
1368 in the SOAP Messages with Attachments [SOAPATTACH] W3C Note. This root part always contains the
1369 ebMS header.

1370 The MIME Content-Type header for the root part MUST have the value "text/xml" to match the MIME
1371 media type of the MIME body part containing the [SOAP11] Message document, or "application/soap+xml"
1372 in the case of a [SOAP12] body. The Content-Type header MAY contain a "charset" parameter. For
1373 example:

```
1374 Content-Type: text/xml; charset="UTF-8"
```

1375 The MIME charset parameter identifies the character set used to create the SOAP Message. The
1376 semantics of this attribute are described in the "charset parameter / encoding considerations" of text/xml
1377 as specified in [RFC3023]. The list of valid values can be found at [IANAMEDIA].

1378 If both are present, the value of the MIME charset parameter SHALL be equivalent to the encoding
1379 declaration of the SOAP Message. If provided, the MIME charset parameter MUST NOT contain a value
1380 conflicting with the encoding used when creating the SOAP Message.

1381 For maximum interoperability it is RECOMMENDED UTF-8 [UTF8] be used when encoding this
1382 document. Due to the processing rules defined for media types derived from text/xml [RFC3023], this
1383 MIME attribute has no default.

1384 The following fragment represents an example of a root part, for a MIME packaging of ebMS:

```
1385 Content-ID: <messagepackage-123@example.com>  
1386 Content-Type: text/xml; charset="UTF-8"  
1387  
1388 <S11:Envelope xmlns:SOAP="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">  
1389   <S11:Header>  
1390     <eb:Messaging>  
1391       ...  
1392     </eb:Messaging>  
1393   </S11:Header>  
1394   <S11:Body>  
1395     ...  
1396   </S11:Body>  
1397 </S11:Envelope>
```

1398 **5.1.5. Payload Containers**

1399 In addition to the SOAP Body, other Payload Containers MAY be present within a Message Package in
1400 conformance with the SOAP Messages with Attachments [SOAPATTACH] specification.

1401 If there is no application payload within the Message Package, then the SOAP Body MUST be empty, and
1402 there MUST NOT be additional Payload Containers.

1403 There SHOULD also be no additional MIME attachments that are not Payload Containers (i.e., that are not
1404 referenced by an eb:PayloadInfo element, as described in Section 5.2.2.12); but if any such attachments
1405 are present, they are outside the scope of MSH processing. An MSH MUST NOT process application data
1406 that is not referenced by eb:PayloadInfo.

1407 The contents of each Payload Container (including the SOAP Body) MUST be identified in the
1408 /eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo element.

1409 The ebXML Messaging Service Specification makes no provision, nor limits in any way, the structure or
1410 content of application payloads. Payloads MAY be simple, plain-text objects or complex, nested, multipart
1411 objects. The specification of the structure and composition of payload objects is the prerogative of the
1412 organization defining the business process or information exchange using the ebXML Messaging Service.

1413 Example of SOAP Message containing an ebMS header:

```
1414 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
1415   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"  
1416   xsi:schemaLocation="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/  
1417     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">  
1418   <S11:Header  
1419     xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/"  
1420     xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/  
1421       http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">  
1422     <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1">  
1423       <eb:UserMessage>  
1424         ...  
1425         <eb:PayloadInfo>  
1426           ...  
1427         </eb:PayloadInfo>  
1428         ...  
1429       </eb:UserMessage>  
1430     </eb:Messaging>  
1431   </S11:Header>  
1432   <S11:Body>  
1433     ...  
1434   </S11:Body>  
1435 </S11:Envelope>
```

1436 5.2. The eb:Messaging Container Element

1437 The REQUIRED eb:Messaging element is a child of the SOAP Header. It is a container for either a User
1438 message or a Signal message.

1439 In the case of a User message, the ebXML header block contains an eb:UserMessage child element:

```
1440 <eb:Messaging>  
1441   <eb:UserMessage>  
1442     <eb:MessageInfo>  
1443       <!-- some headers here like Timestamp and MessageId -->  
1444     </eb:MessageInfo>  
1445     <!-- header elements of the ebMS user message -->  
1446   </eb:UserMessage>  
1447 </eb:Messaging>
```

1448 In the case of a Signal message, the ebXML header block (eb:Messaging) contains at least one
1449 eb:SignalMessage child element:

```
1450 <eb:Messaging>  
1451   <eb:SignalMessage>  
1452     <eb:MessageInfo>  
1453       <!-- some headers here like Timestamp and MessageId -->  
1454     </eb:MessageInfo>  
1455     <eb:signalname>  
1456       <!-- header elements of this ebMS signal message -->  
1457     </eb:signalname>  
1458   </eb:SignalMessage>  
1459 </eb:Messaging>
```

1460 For example, *signalname* can be "PullRequest".

1461 5.2.1. eb:Messaging Element Specification

1462 The eb:Messaging element has the following attributes:

- 1463 • eb:Messaging/@S11:mustUnderstand: indicates whether the contents of the element MUST
1464 be understood by the MSH. This attribute is REQUIRED, with namespace qualified to the SOAP
1465 namespace (<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/>). It MUST have value of '1' (true)
1466 indicating the element MUST be understood or rejected.

1467 The eb:Messaging element has the following children elements:

- 1468 • eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage: The OPTIONAL UserMessage element contains all header
1469 information for a User message. If this element is not present, an element describing a Signal
1470 message MUST be present.
- 1471 • eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:[*signalname*]: The OPTIONAL element is named
1472 after a type of Signal message. It contains all header information for the Signal message. If this
1473 element is not present, an element describing a User message MUST be present. Three types of
1474 Signal messages are specified in this document: Pull signal (eb:PullRequest), Error signal
1475 (eb:Error) and Receipt signal (eb:Receipt).

1476 Both eb:UserMessage element and eb:SignalMessage element MAY be present within the eb:Messaging
1477 element.

1478

1479 Example ebMS Message Header:

```
1480 <!-- (contained within S11:Header) -->
1481
1482   <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" >
1483
1484     <eb:UserMessage>
1485
1486       <eb:MessageInfo>
1487         <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
1488         <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@example.com</eb:MessageId>
1489         <eb:RefToMessageId>UUID-1@example.com</eb:RefToMessageId>
1490       </eb:MessageInfo>
1491
1492       <eb:PartyInfo>
1493         <eb:From>
1494           <eb:PartyId>uri:example.com</eb:PartyId>
1495           <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Buyer</eb:Role>
1496         </eb:From>
1497
1498         <eb:To>
1499           <eb:PartyId type="someType">QRS543</eb:PartyId>
1500           <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Seller</eb:Role>
1501         </eb:To>
1502       </eb:PartyInfo>
1503
1504       <eb:CollaborationInfo>
1505         <eb:AgreementRef>http://registry.example.com/cpa/123456
1506       </eb:AgreementRef>
1507       <eb:Service type="MyServiceTypes">QuoteToCollect</eb:Service>
1508       <eb:Action>NewPurchaseOrder</eb:Action>
1509       <eb:ConversationId>4321</eb:ConversationId>
1510     </eb:CollaborationInfo >
1511
1512     <eb:MessageProperties>
1513       <eb:Property name="ProcessInst">PurchaseOrder:123456
1514     </eb:Property>
1515       <eb:Property name="ContextID"> 987654321
1516     </eb:Property>
1517     </eb:MessageProperties >
1518
1519     <eb:PayloadInfo>
1520       <eb:PartInfo href="cid:foo@example.com">
1521         <eb:Schema location="http://example.org/bar.xsd" version="2.0"/>
1522         <eb:Description xml:lang="en-US">Purchase Order for 100,000 foo
1523 widgets</eb:Description>
1524       </eb:PartInfo>
1525       <eb:PartInfo href="#idref">
1526     </eb:PartInfo>
```

1527
1528
1529
1530
1531

```
</eb:PayloadInfo>  
  
</eb:UserMessage>  
</eb:Messaging>
```

1532 **5.2.2. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage**

1533 This element has the following attributes:

- 1534 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/@mpc`: This OPTIONAL attribute contains a URI that
1535 identifies the Message Partition Channel to which the message is assigned. The absence of this
1536 element indicates the use of the default MPC. When the message is pulled, the value of this
1537 attribute MUST indicate the MPC requested in the PullRequest message.

1538 This element has the following children elements:

- 1539 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageInfo`: This REQUIRED element occurs once,
1540 and contains data that identifies the message, and relates to other messages' identifiers.
- 1541 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo`: This REQUIRED element occurs once,
1542 and contains data about originating party and destination party.
- 1543 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo`: This REQUIRED element
1544 occurs once, and contains elements that facilitate collaboration between parties.
- 1545 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageProperties`: This OPTIONAL element
1546 occurs at most once, and contains message properties that are user-specific. As parts of the
1547 header such properties allow for more efficient monitoring, correlating, dispatching and validating
1548 functions (even if these are out of scope of ebMS specification) which would otherwise require
1549 payload access.
- 1550 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo`: This OPTIONAL element occurs at
1551 most once, and identifies payload data associated with the message, whether included as part of
1552 the message as payload document(s) contained in a Payload Container, or remote resources
1553 accessible via a URL. The purpose of the PayloadInfo is (a) to make it easier to directly extract a
1554 particular payload associated with this User message, (b) to allow an application to determine
1555 whether it can process the payload without having to parse it.

1556 **5.2.2.1. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageInfo**

1557 This element has the following children elements:

- 1558 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageInfo/eb:Timestamp`: The REQUIRED
1559 Timestamp element has a value representing the date at which the message header was created,
1560 and is conforming to a dateTime (see [XMLSCHEMA]). It MUST be expressed as UTC. Indicating
1561 UTC in the Timestamp element by including the 'Z' identifier is optional.
- 1562 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageInfo/eb:MessageId`: This REQUIRED
1563 element has a value representing – for each message - a globally unique identifier conforming to
1564 MessageId [RFC2822]. Note: In the Message-Id and Content-Id MIME headers, values are always
1565 surrounded by angle brackets. However references in mid: or cid: scheme URI's and the
1566 MessageId and RefToMessageId elements MUST NOT include these delimiters.
- 1567 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageInfo/eb:RefToMessageId`: This
1568 OPTIONAL element occurs at most once. When present, it MUST contain the MessageId value of
1569 an ebMS Message to which this message relates, in a way that conforms to the MEP in use (see
1570 Section C.3).

1571 **5.2.2.2. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo**

1572 This element has the following children elements:

- 1573 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From`: The REQUIRED element
1574 occurs once, and contains information describing the originating party.

- 1575 • eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:To: The REQUIRED element occurs
1576 once, and contains information describing the destination party.

1577 **5.2.2.3. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From**

1578 This element has the following children elements:

- 1579 • eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From/eb:PartyId: The
1580 REQUIRED PartyId element occurs one or more times. If it occurs multiple times, each instance
1581 MUST identify the same organization.
- 1582 • eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From/eb:Role: The REQUIRED
1583 eb:Role element occurs once, and identifies the authorized role (fromAuthorizedRole or
1584 toAuthorizedRole) of the Party sending (when present as a child of the From element) or receiving
1585 (when present as a child of the To element) the message. The value of the Role element is a non-
1586 empty string, with a default value of
1587 `http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/defaultRole`.
1588 Other possible values are subject to partner agreement.

1589 **Example:** The following fragment demonstrates usage of the From element.

```
1590 <eb:From>  
1591   <eb:PartyId type="urn:oasis:names:tc:ebxml-cppa:partyid-type:duns">  
1592 123456789</eb:PartyId>  
1593   <eb:PartyId type="SCAC">RDWY</eb:PartyId>  
1594   <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Buyer</eb:Role>  
1595 </eb:From>
```

1596 **5.2.2.4. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From/eb:PartyId**

1597 This element has a string value content that identifies a party, or that is one of the identifiers of this party.

1598 It has a single attribute, @type. The type attribute indicates the domain of names to which the string in the
1599 content of the PartyId element belongs. It is RECOMMENDED that the value of the type attribute be a
1600 URI. It is further RECOMMENDED that these values be taken from the EDIRA , EDIFACT or ANSI ASC
1601 X12 registries. Technical specifications for the first two registries can be found at and [ISO6523] and
1602 [ISO9735], respectively. Further discussion of PartyId types and methods of construction can be found in
1603 an appendix of [ebCPA21]. The value of any given @type attribute MUST be unique within a list of
1604 PartyId elements.

1605 An example of PartyId element is:

```
1606 <eb:PartyId type="urn:oasis:names:tc:ebxml-cppa:partyid-type:duns">  
1607 123456789</eb:PartyId>
```

1608 If the eb:PartyId/@type attribute is not present, the content of the PartyId element MUST be a URI
1609 [RFC2396], otherwise the Receiving MSH SHOULD report a "ValueInconsistent" error with severity
1610 "error". It is strongly RECOMMENDED that the content of the eb:PartyId element be a URI.

1611 **5.2.2.5. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:To**

1612 This element has the same children elements as

1613 eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From, above in Section 5.2.2.3.

1614 **Example:** The following fragment demonstrates usage of the To element.

```
1615 <eb:To>  
1616   <eb:PartyId>mailto:joe@example.com</eb:PartyId>  
1617   <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Seller</eb:Role>  
1618 </eb:To>
```

1619 **5.2.2.6. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo**

1620 This element has the following children elements:

- 1621 • eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:AgreementRef: This

1622 OPTIONAL element occurs zero or once. The AgreementRef element is a string that identifies the
1623 entity or artifact governing the exchange of messages between the parties.

- 1624 • eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:Service: This
1625 REQUIRED element occurs once. It is a string identifying the service that acts on the message
1626 and it is specified by the designer of the service.
- 1627 • eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:Action: This REQUIRED
1628 element occurs once. The element is a string identifying an operation or an activity within a
1629 Service that may support several of these.
- 1630 • eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:ConversationId: This
1631 REQUIRED element occurs once. The element is a string identifying the set of related messages
1632 that make up a conversation between Parties.

1633 5.2.2.7. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:AgreementRef

1634 AgreementRef is a string value that identifies the agreement that governs the exchange. The P-Mode
1635 under which the MSH operates for this message should be aligned with this agreement.

1636 The value of an AgreementRef element MUST be unique within a namespace mutually agreed by the two
1637 parties. This could be a concatenation of the From and To PartyId values, a URI containing the Internet
1638 domain name of one of the parties, or a namespace offered and managed by some other naming or
1639 registry service. It is RECOMMENDED that the AgreementRef be a URI. The AgreementRef MAY
1640 reference an instance of a CPA as defined in [ebCPA].

1641 An example of the AgreementRef element follows:

```
1642 <eb:AgreementRef>http://registry.example.com/cpas/our_cpa.xml</eb:AgreementRef>
```

1643 If a CPA is referred to and a Receiving MSH detects an inconsistency, then it MUST report it with an
1644 "ValueInconsistent" error of severity "error". If the AgreementRef is not recognized, then the
1645 Receiving MSH MUST report it as a "ValueNotRecognized" error of severity "error".

1646 The AgreementRef element may have two attributes:

- 1647 • @type: This OPTIONAL attribute indicates how the parties sending and receiving the message
1648 will interpret the value of the reference (e.g. the value could be "ebcpa2.1" for parties using a
1649 CPA-based agreement representation). There is no restriction on the value of the type attribute;
1650 this choice is left to profiles of this specification. If the type attribute is not present, the content of
1651 the eb:AgreementRef element MUST be a URI. If it is not a URI, then the MSH MUST report a
1652 "ValueInconsistent" error of severity "error".
- 1653 • @pmode: This OPTIONAL attribute allows for explicit association of a message with a P-Mode.
1654 When used, its value contains the PMode.ID parameter.

1655 5.2.2.8. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:Service

1656 This element identifies the service that acts on the message. Its actual semantics is beyond the scope of
1657 this specification. The designer of the service may be a standards organization, or an individual or
1658 enterprise.

1659 Examples of the Service element include:

```
1660 <eb:Service>urn:example.org:services:SupplierOrderProcessing</eb:Service>
```

1661

```
1662 <eb:Service type="MyServiceTypes">QuoteToCollect</eb:Service>
```

1663 The Service element MAY contain a single @type attribute, that indicates how the parties sending and
1664 receiving the message will interpret the value of the element. There is no restriction on the value of the
1665 type attribute. If the type attribute is not present, the content of the Service element MUST be a URI (see
1666 [RFC2396]). If it is not a URI then the MSH MUST report a "ValueInconsistent" error of severity
1667 "error".

1668 When the value of the element is `http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-`
1669 `msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/service`, then the receiving MSH MUST NOT deliver this
1670 message to the Consumer. With the exception of this delivery behavior, and unless indicated otherwise by

1671 the eb:Action element, the processing of the message is not different from any other user message.

1672 **5.2.2.9. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:Action**

1673 This element is a string identifying an operation or an activity within a Service. Its actual semantics is
1674 beyond the scope of this specification. Action SHALL be unique within the Service in which it is defined.
1675 The value of the Action element is specified by the designer of the service.

1676 An example of the Action element follows:

```
1677 <eb:Action>NewOrder</eb:Action>
```

1678 If the value of either the Service or Action element is unrecognized by the Receiving MSH, then it MUST
1679 report a "ValueNotRecognized" error of severity "error".

1680 When the value of this element is `http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-`
1681 `msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/test`, then the eb:Service element MUST have the value
1682 `http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/service`. Such a
1683 value for the eb:Action element only indicates that the user message is sent for testing purposes and does
1684 not require any specific handling by the MSH.

1685 **5.2.2.10. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:ConversationId**

1686 This element is a string identifying the set of related messages that make up a conversation between
1687 Parties.

1688 If a CPA is referred to by eb:AgreementRef, the number of conversations related to this CPA MUST
1689 comply with CPA requirements. The value of eb:ConversationId MUST uniquely identify a
1690 conversation within the context of this CPA.

1691 An example of the ConversationId element follows:

```
1692 <eb:ConversationId>20001209-133003-28572</eb:ConversationId>
```

1693 The Party initiating a conversation determines the value of the ConversationId element that SHALL be
1694 reflected in all messages pertaining to that conversation. The actual semantics of this value is beyond the
1695 scope of this specification. Implementations SHOULD provide a facility for mapping between their
1696 identification scheme and a ConversationId generated by another implementation.

1697 **5.2.2.11. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageProperties**

1698 This element has zero or more eb:Property child elements.

1699 An eb:Property element is of xs:anySimpleType (e.g. string, URI) and has two attributes:

- 1700 • @name: The value of this REQUIRED attribute must be agreed upon between partners.
- 1701 • @type: This OPTIONAL attribute allows for resolution of conflicts between properties with the
1702 same name, and may also help with Property grouping, e.g. various elements of an address.

1703 Its actual semantics is beyond the scope of this specification. The element is intended to be consumed
1704 outside the ebMS-specified functions. It may contain some information that qualifies or abstracts message
1705 data, or that allows for binding the message to some business process. A representation in the header of
1706 such properties allows for more efficient monitoring, correlating, dispatching and validating functions (even
1707 if these are out of scope of ebMS specification) that do not require payload access.

1708 Example:

```
1709 <eb:MessageProperties>  
1710 <eb:Property name="ContextId">C1234</eb:Property>  
1711 <eb:Property name="processinstanceID">3A4-1234</eb:Property>  
1712 <eb:Property name="transactionID">45764321</eb:Property>  
1713 </eb:MessageProperties>
```

1714 **5.2.2.12. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo**

1715 Each PayloadInfo element identifies payload data associated with the message. The purpose of the
1716 PayloadInfo is:

- 1717 • to make it easier to extract particular payload parts associated with this ebMS Message,
- 1718 • and to allow an application to determine whether it can process these payload parts, without
1719 having to parse them.

1720 The PayloadInfo element has the following child element:

- 1721 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo/eb:PartInfo`
1722 This element occurs zero or more times. The PartInfo element is used to reference a MIME
1723 attachment, an XML element within the SOAP Body, or another resource which may be obtained
1724 by resolving a URL, according to the value of the href attribute, described below.

1725 **5.2.2.13. eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo/eb:PartInfo**

1726 This element has the following attribute:

- 1727 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo/eb:PartInfo/@href`
1728 This OPTIONAL attribute has a value that is the [RFC2392] Content-ID URI of the payload object
1729 referenced, an xml:id fragment identifier, or the URL of an externally referenced resource; for
1730 example, "cid:foo@example.com" or "#idref". The absence of the attribute href in the element
1731 eb:PartInfo indicates that the payload part being referenced is the SOAP Body element itself. For
1732 example, a declaration of the following form simply indicates that the entire SOAP Body is to be
1733 considered a payload part in this ebMS message:

```
1734 <eb:PayloadInfo>  
1735   <eb:PartInfo/>  
1736 </eb:PayloadInfo>
```

1737 Any other namespace-qualified attribute MAY be present. A Receiving MSH MAY choose to ignore any
1738 foreign namespace attributes other than those defined above.

1739 The designer of the business process or information exchange using ebXML Messaging decides what
1740 payload data is referenced by the Manifest and the values to be used for xlink:role.

1741 This element has the following child elements:

- 1742 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo/eb:PartInfo/eb:Schema`
1743 This element occurs zero or more times. It refers to schema(s) that define the instance document
1744 identified in the parent PartInfo element. If the item being referenced has schema(s) of some kind
1745 that describe it (e.g. an XML Schema, DTD and/or a database schema), then the Schema
1746 element SHOULD be present as a child of the PartInfo element. It provides a means of identifying
1747 the schema and its version defining the payload object identified by the parent PartInfo element.
1748 This metadata MAY be used to validate the Payload Part to which it refers, but the MSH is NOT
1749 REQUIRED to do so. The Schema element contains the following attributes:
 - 1750 • (a) namespace - the OPTIONAL target namespace of the schema
 - 1751 • (b) location – the REQUIRED URI of the schema
 - 1752 • (c) version – an OPTIONAL version identifier of the schema.
- 1753 • `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PayloadInfo/eb:PartInfo/eb:PartProperties`
1754 This element has zero or more eb:Property child elements. An eb:Property element is of
1755 xs:anySimpleType (e.g. string, URI) and has a REQUIRED @name attribute, the value of which
1756 must be agreed between partners. Its actual semantics is beyond the scope of this specification.
1757 The element is intended to be consumed outside the ebMS specified functions. It may contain
1758 meta-data that qualifies or abstracts the payload data. A representation in the header of such
1759 properties allows for more efficient monitoring, correlating, dispatching and validating functions
1760 (even if these are out of scope of ebMS specification) that do not require payload access.

1761 Example:

```
1762 <eb:PartProperties>
```

```
1763     <eb:Property name="Description">Purchase Order for 11
1764 widgets</eb:Property>
1765     <eb:Property name="MimeType">application/xml</eb:Property>
1766 </eb:PartProperties>
```

1767 Full PayloadInfo Example:

```
1768 <eb:PayloadInfo>
1769   <eb:PartInfo href="cid:foo@example.com">
1770     <eb:Schema location="http://example.org/bar.xsd" version="2.0"/>
1771     <eb:PartProperties>
1772       <eb:Property name="Description">Purchase Order for 11 widgets</eb:Property>
1773       <eb:Property name="MimeType">application/xml</eb:Property>
1774     </eb:PartProperties>
1775   </eb:PartInfo>
1776   <eb:PartInfo href="#goo_payload_id">
1777     <eb:Schema location="http://example.org/bar.xsd" version="2.0"/>
1778     <eb:PartProperties>
1779       <eb:Property name="Description">Purchase Order for 100 widgets</eb:Property>
1780       <eb:Property name="MimeType">application/xml</eb:Property>
1781     </eb:PartProperties>
1782   </eb:PartInfo>
1783 </eb:PayloadInfo>
```

1784 5.2.3. eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage

1785 This element is an alternative to the eb:UserMessage element. It has two child elements:

- 1786 • eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:MessageInfo
1787 This REQUIRED element is similar to eb:MessageInfo as defined for user messages.
- 1788 • eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:[SignalName]
1789 This REQUIRED element defines the nature of the ebMS signal. There is only one
1790 eb:[SignalName] child element when [SignalName]=PullRequest or [SignalName]=Receipt. There
1791 may be several children elements when SignalName=Error.

1792 An ebMS signal does not require any SOAP Body: if the SOAP Body is not empty, it MUST be ignored by
1793 the MSH, as far as interpretation of the signal is concerned.

1794 5.2.3.1. eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:PullRequest

1795 This element has the following attribute:

- 1796 • eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:PullRequest/@mpc
1797 This OPTIONAL attribute identifies the Message Partition Channel from which the message is to
1798 be pulled. The absence of this attribute indicates the default MPC.

1799 5.2.3.2. eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:Error

1800 The eb:Error element MAY occur zero or more times. For its complete specification, refer to Section 6.

1801 5.2.3.3. eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:Receipt

1802 The eb:Receipt element MAY occur zero or one times; and, if present, SHOULD contain a single
1803 ebbpsig:NonRepudiationInformation child element, as defined in the ebBP Signal Schema [ebBP-SIG].
1804 The value of eb:MessageInfo/eb:RefToMessageId MUST refer to the message for which this signal is a
1805 receipt.

1806 5.2.4. Message Unit Bundling

1807 When the eb:Messaging element contains multiple children elements, i.e. multiple Message Units (either
1808 User Message Units or Signal Message Units), this is called Message Unit bundling. The following general
1809 rules govern Message Unit bundling:

1810 Note:

1811 Other use cases for bundling may be considered in a forthcoming Part 2 of this
1812 specification, resulting in changes to these rules, potentially allowing for multiple User

- 1813 Message Units or multiple Signal Message Units of the same type.
- 1814 • The eb:Messaging element MUST NOT contain more than one eb:UserMessage element.
 - 1815 • The eb:Messaging element MAY contain multiple eb:SignalMessage elements, in addition to an
 - 1816 optional eb:UserMessage element, but MUST NOT contain more than one Signal Message Unit
 - 1817 of the same type.
- 1818 The following is a non-exhaustive list of valid bundling cases:
- 1819 (a) eb:Messaging element with the following children:
 - 1820 • an eb:UserMessage element
 - 1821 • an eb:SignalMessage element with an eb:PullRequest child
 - 1822 (b) eb:Messaging element with the following children:
 - 1823 • an eb:UserMessage element
 - 1824 • an eb:SignalMessage element with one or more eb:Error children
 - 1825 (c) eb:Messaging element with the following children:
 - 1826 • an eb:UserMessage element
 - 1827 • an eb:SignalMessage element with an eb:PullRequest child
 - 1828 • an eb:SignalMessage element (distinct from the previous one) with one or more
 - 1829 eb:Error children
 - 1830 (d) eb:Messaging element with the following children:
 - 1831 • an eb:SignalMessage element with an eb:PullRequest child
 - 1832 • an eb:SignalMessage element (distinct from the previous one) with an eb:Receipt
 - 1833 child
- 1834 With regard to MEP transport channel bindings, the following restrictions must be observed:
- 1835 • An ebMS Message containing an eb:SignalMessage/eb:PullRequest element cannot bind to the
 - 1836 back-channel of the underlying transport protocol, regardless of its bundling context (bundling
 - 1837 cases (a) , (c) or (d)) i.e. even if it is also a User Message. For example, such a message can
 - 1838 neither appear as "reply" in the Sync transport channel binding, nor as a "oneway" in the Pull
 - 1839 transport channel binding.
 - 1840 • An ebMS Message containing an eb:SignalMessage/eb:PullRequest element and a User
 - 1841 Message unit (case (a) or case (c)) cannot act as a "request" in the Sync transport channel
 - 1842 binding, as the semantics of this combination would require sending back two User Messages
 - 1843 units over the back-channel, which is a bundling case not supported in this release.

1844 5.3. Examples of ebMS Messages

1845 The following listings provide examples of various types of ebMS messages: UserMessage, PullRequest
1846 Signal, Error Signal, Receipt Signal and a "bundled" message.

1847 Note:
1848 The examples are depicted using the SOAP 1.1 envelope; however, SOAP 1.2 could
1849 have been used instead, with the appropriate namespace adjustment. In that case, the
1850 contents of the eb:Messaging header would be the same, with the exception of the
1851 attribute eb:Messaging/@S11:mustUnderstand, which becomes
1852 eb:Messaging/@S12:mustUnderstand, having a boolean value of "true" instead of
1853 the integer value "1".

1854 5.3.1. UserMessage Example

1855 The following is an example of an ebMS Request User Message packaged in a SOAP 1.1 envelope:

```
1856 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
1857     xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">
1858 <S11:Header>
1859
```

```

1860 <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
1861 xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
1862 http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
1863 <eb:UserMessage>
1864 <eb:MessageInfo>
1865 <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
1866 <eb:MessageId>UUID-1@requester.example.com</eb:MessageId>
1867 </eb:MessageInfo>
1868 <eb:PartyInfo>
1869 <eb:From>
1870 <eb:PartyId>uri:requester.example.com</eb:PartyId>
1871 <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Buyer</eb:Role>
1872 </eb:From>
1873 <eb:To>
1874 <eb:PartyId type="someType">QRS543</eb:PartyId>
1875 <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Seller</eb:Role>
1876 </eb:To>
1877 </eb:PartyInfo>
1878 <eb:CollaborationInfo>
1879 <eb:AgreementRef>http://registry.example.com/cpa/123456</eb:AgreementRef>
1880 <eb:Service type="MyServiceTypes">QuoteToCollect</eb:Service>
1881 <eb:Action>NewPurchaseOrder</eb:Action>
1882 <eb:ConversationId>4321</eb:ConversationId>
1883 </eb:CollaborationInfo>
1884 <eb:MessageProperties>
1885 <eb:Property name="ProcessInst">PurchaseOrder:123456</eb:Property>
1886 <eb:Property name="ContextID"> 987654321</eb:Property>
1887 </eb:MessageProperties>
1888 <eb:PayloadInfo>
1889 <eb:PartInfo href="cid:part@example.com">
1890 <eb:Schema location="http://registry.example.com/po.xsd" version="2.0"/>
1891 <eb:PartProperties>
1892 <eb:Property name="Description">Purchase Order for 11 Widgets</eb:Property>
1893 <eb:Property name="MimeType">application/xml</eb:Property>
1894 </eb:PartProperties>
1895 </eb:PartInfo>
1896 </eb:PayloadInfo>
1897 </eb:UserMessage>
1898 </eb:Messaging>
1899
1900 </S11:Header>
1901 <S11:Body>
1902 </S11:Body>
1903 </S11:Envelope>

```

1904

1905 The following is an example of a possible Response to the above User Message:

```

1906 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
1907 xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">
1908 <S11:Header>
1909
1910 <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
1911 xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
1912 http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
1913 <eb:UserMessage>
1914 <eb:MessageInfo>
1915 <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
1916 <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@responder.example.com</eb:MessageId>
1917 <eb:RefToMessageId>UUID-1@requester.example.com</eb:RefToMessageId>
1918 </eb:MessageInfo>
1919 <eb:PartyInfo>
1920 <eb:From>
1921 <eb:PartyId type="someType">QRS543</eb:PartyId>
1922 <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Seller</eb:Role>
1923 </eb:From>
1924 <eb:To>
1925 <eb:PartyId>uri:requester.example.com</eb:PartyId>
1926 <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Buyer</eb:Role>
1927 </eb:To>
1928 </eb:PartyInfo>
1929 <eb:CollaborationInfo>
1930 <eb:AgreementRef>http://registry.example.com/cpa/123456</eb:AgreementRef>
1931 <eb:Service type="MyServiceTypes">QuoteToCollect</eb:Service>
1932 <eb:Action>PurchaseOrderResponse</eb:Action>

```

```

1933     <eb:ConversationId>4321</eb:ConversationId>
1934   </eb:CollaborationInfo>
1935   <eb:PayloadInfo>
1936     <eb:PartInfo href="cid:part@example.com">
1937       <eb:Schema location="http://registry.example.org/poc.xsd" version="2.0"/>
1938       <eb:PartProperties>
1939         <eb:Property name="Description">Purchase Order Confirmation</eb:Property>
1940         <eb:Property name="MimeType">application/xml</eb:Property>
1941       </eb:PartProperties>
1942     </eb:PartInfo>
1943   </eb:PayloadInfo>
1944 </eb:UserMessage>
1945 </eb:Messaging>
1946
1947 </S11:Header>
1948 <S11:Body>
1949 </S11:Body>
1950 </S11:Envelope>

```

1951 5.3.2. PullRequest Message Example

1952 The following is an example of a PullRequest Signal Message:

```

1953 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
1954   xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">
1955 <S11:Header>
1956
1957   <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
1958     xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
1959     http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
1960     <eb:SignalMessage>
1961       <eb:MessageInfo>
1962         <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
1963         <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@initiator.example.com</eb:MessageId>
1964       </eb:MessageInfo>
1965       <eb:PullRequest mpc="http://msh.example.com/mpc123" />
1966     </eb:SignalMessage>
1967   </eb:Messaging>
1968
1969 </S11:Header>
1970
1971 <S11:Body/>
1972 </S11:Envelope>

```

1973

1974 5.3.3. Error Message Example

1975 The following is an example of an Error Signal Message:

```

1976 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
1977   xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">
1978 <S11:Header>
1979
1980   <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
1981     xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
1982     http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
1983     <eb:SignalMessage>
1984       <eb:MessageInfo>
1985         <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
1986         <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@receiver.example.com</eb:MessageId>
1987       </eb:MessageInfo>
1988       <eb:Error origin="ebMS" category="Content"
1989         errorCode="EBMS:0001" severity="failure"
1990         refToMessageInError="UUID-1@sender.example.com">
1991         <eb:Description xml:lang="en">Value not recognized</eb:Description>
1992       </eb:Error>
1993       <eb:Error origin="Security" category="Processing" errorCode="0101"
1994         severity="failure" refToMessageInError="UUID-23@sender.fxample.com">
1995         <eb:Description xml:lang="en">Failed Authentication</eb:Description>
1996       </eb:Error>
1997     </eb:SignalMessage>
1998
1999 </eb:Messaging>

```

```
2000
2001 </S11:Header>
2002
2003 <S11:Body/>
2004 </S11:Envelope>
```

2005 5.3.4. Receipt Message Example

2006 The following is an example a Receipt Signal Message, as described in Section 5.2.3.3:

```
2007 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
2008   xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/"
2009 <S11:Header>
2010   <eb:Messaging xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2011     xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
2012       http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd"
2013     xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#"
2014     xmlns:ebbpsig="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-bp/ebbp-signals-2.0">
2015
2016     <eb:SignalMessage>
2017       <eb:MessageInfo>
2018         <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-01T13:42:37.429Z</eb:Timestamp>
2019         <eb:MessageId>uiwtoruioopr2543890@b.example.com</eb:MessageId>
2020         <eb:RefToMessageId>uiopfdsnmf4898965563434@a.example.com</eb:RefToMessageId>
2021       </eb:MessageInfo>
2022
2023       <eb:Receipt>
2024         <ebbpsig:NonRepudiationInformation>
2025           <ebbpsig:MessagePartNRInformation>
2026             <ebbpsig:MessagePartIdentifier></ebbpsig:MessagePartIdentifier>
2027             <ds:Reference URI="http://b.example.com/doc45/#b">
2028               <ds:DigestMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1"/>
2029               <ds:DigestValue>fX/iNylcUHNLV4lCE0eC7aEGP28=</ds:DigestValue>
2030             </ds:Reference>
2031           </ebbpsig:MessagePartNRInformation>
2032           <ebbpsig:MessagePartNRInformation>
2033             <ebbpsig:MessagePartIdentifier></ebbpsig:MessagePartIdentifier>
2034             <ds:Reference URI="http://a.example.com/doc23/#a">
2035               <ds:DigestMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1"/>
2036               <ds:DigestValue>fX/iNylcUHNLV4lCE0eC7aEGP28=</ds:DigestValue>
2037             </ds:Reference>
2038           </ebbpsig:MessagePartNRInformation>
2039         </ebbpsig:NonRepudiationInformation>
2040       </eb:Receipt>
2041     </eb:SignalMessage>
2042   </eb:Messaging>
2043 </S11:Header>
2044
2045 <S11:Body/>
2046 </S11:Envelope>
```

2049 5.3.5. "Bundled" Message Example

2050 The following is an example a User Message unit bundled with both PullRequest and Error Signal
2051 Message units, as described in Section 5.2.4:

```
2052 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
2053   xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/"
2054 <S11:Header>
2055
2056   <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2057     xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
2058       http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
2059
2060     <eb:SignalMessage>
2061       <eb:MessageInfo>
2062         <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
2063         <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@receiver.example.com</eb:MessageId>
2064       </eb:MessageInfo>
2065       <eb:Error origin="ebMS" category="Content"
2066         errorCode="EBMS:0001" severity="failure"
2067         refToMessageInError="UUID-1@sender.example.com">
```

```

2068     <eb:Description xml:lang="en">Value not recognized</eb:Description>
2069   </eb:Error>
2070   <eb:Error origin="Security" category="Processing" errorCode="0101"
2071     severity="failure" refToMessageInError="UUID-23@sender.fxample.com">
2072     <eb:Description xml:lang="en">Failed Authentication</eb:Description>
2073   </eb:Error>
2074 </eb:SignalMessage>
2075
2076   <eb:SignalMessage>
2077     <eb:MessageInfo>
2078       <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
2079       <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@initiator.example.com</eb:MessageId>
2080     </eb:MessageInfo>
2081     <eb:PullRequest mpc="http://msh.example.com/mpc123" />
2082   </eb:SignalMessage>
2083
2084   <eb:UserMessage>
2085     <eb:MessageInfo>
2086       <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
2087       <eb:MessageId>UUID-1@requester.example.com</eb:MessageId>
2088     </eb:MessageInfo>
2089     <eb:PartyInfo>
2090       <eb:From>
2091         <eb:PartyId>uri:requester.example.com</eb:PartyId>
2092         <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Buyer</eb:Role>
2093       </eb:From>
2094       <eb:To>
2095         <eb:PartyId type="someType">QRS543</eb:PartyId>
2096         <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Seller</eb:Role>
2097       </eb:To>
2098     </eb:PartyInfo>
2099     <eb:CollaborationInfo>
2100       <eb:AgreementRef>http://registry.example.com/cpa/123456</eb:AgreementRef>
2101       <eb:Service type="MyServiceTypes">QuoteToCollect</eb:Service>
2102       <eb:Action>NewPurchaseOrder</eb:Action>
2103       <eb:ConversationId>4321</eb:ConversationId>
2104     </eb:CollaborationInfo>
2105     <eb:MessageProperties>
2106       <eb:Property name="ProcessInst">PurchaseOrder:123456</eb:Property>
2107       <eb:Property name="ContextID"> 987654321</eb:Property>
2108     </eb:MessageProperties>
2109     <eb:PayloadInfo>
2110       <eb:PartInfo href="cid:foo@example.com">
2111         <eb:Schema location="http://registry.example.org/bar.xsd" version="2.0"/>
2112         <eb:PartProperties>
2113           <eb:Property name="Description">Purchase Order for 11 widgets</eb:Property>
2114           <eb:Property name="MimeType">application/xml</eb:Property>
2115         </eb:PartProperties>
2116       </eb:PartInfo>
2117     </eb:PayloadInfo>
2118   </eb:UserMessage>
2119 </eb:Messaging>
2120 </S11:Header>
2121
2122 <S11:Body/>
2123
2124 </S11:Envelope>
2125

```

2126

6. Error Handling

2127 Error handling must take into account the composed nature of an MSH, which includes relatively
2128 independent (SOAP) modules such as those handling reliability and security. Error reporting is also
2129 subject to the same connectivity constraints as the exchange of regular messages. This calls for a more
2130 comprehensive error model. With regard to different ways to report errors, this model must allow for a
2131 clear distinction between what is relevant to an agreement, and what is relevant to immutable
2132 interoperability requirements.

2133 Error generation and error reporting are treated here as orthogonal concepts. While the generation of
2134 errors is a matter of conformance, the reporting of errors may be subject to an agreement. Consequently,
2135 the way errors are to be reported is specified in the P-Mode (P-Mode.ErrorHandling feature) that results
2136 from such an agreement.

2137

6.1. Terminology

- 2138 • **Fault:** A Fault always means a SOAP Fault. It must be generated and processed according to the
2139 [SOAP11] or [SOAP12] specification.
- 2140 • **Error:** An error that is not a SOAP Fault, and occurs in one of the defined modules (ebMS
2141 Module, Reliability Module, Security Module).
- 2142 • **ebMS Error:** This is a particular case of Error, which is generated by the ebMS Module in
2143 conformity with this specification.
- 2144 • **Reliability Error:** This is a particular case of Error, generated by the Reliability Module.
- 2145 • **Security Error:** This is a particular case of Error, generated by the Security Module.
- 2146 • **Escalated ebMS Error:** This is an ebMS Error that originates in a module other than the ebMS
2147 Module (i.e. Security module, or Reliability module).
- 2148 • **ebMS Error Generation:** The operation of creating an ebMS Error object based on some failure
2149 or warning condition.
- 2150 • **ebMS Error Reporting:** The operation of communicating an ebMS Error object to some other
2151 entity.
- 2152 • **Message-in-error:** A flawed message causing an error of some kind.

2153

6.2. Packaging of ebMS Errors

2154

6.2.1. eb>Error Element

2155 An ebMS Error is represented by an eb>Error XML infoset, regardless of the way it is reported. Each error
2156 raised by an MSH has the following properties:

- 2157 • origin (optional attribute)
- 2158 • category (optional attribute)
- 2159 • errorCode (required attribute)
- 2160 • severity (required attribute)
- 2161 • refToMessageInError (optional attribute)
- 2162 • shortDescription (optional attribute)
- 2163 • Description (optional element)
- 2164 • ErrorDetail (optional element)

2165

2166 Example:

```
2167 <eb>Error origin="ebMS" category="Unpackaging"  
2168 shortDescription="InvalidHeader"
```

2169
2170
2171

```
        errorCode="EBMS:0009" severity="fatal">  
        <eb:Description xml:lang="en"> ... </eb:Description>  
</eb>Error>
```

2172 **6.2.2. eb>Error/@origin**

2173 This OPTIONAL attribute identifies the functional module within which the error occurred. This module
2174 could be the the ebMS Module, the Reliability Module, or the Security Module. Possible values for this
2175 attribute include "ebMS", "reliability", and "security". The use of other modules, and thus their
2176 corresponding @origin values, may be specified elsewhere, such as in a forthcoming Part 2 of this
2177 specification.

2178 **6.2.3. eb>Error/@category**

2179 This OPTIONAL attribute identifies the type of error related to a particular origin. For example: Content,
2180 Packaging, UnPackaging, Communication, InternalProcess.

2181 **6.2.4. eb>Error/@errorCode**

2182 This REQUIRED attribute is a unique identifier for the type of error.

2183 **6.2.5. eb>Error/@severity**

2184 This REQUIRED attribute indicates the severity of the error. Valid values are: warning, failure.

2185 The **warning** value indicates that a potentially disabling condition has been detected, but no message
2186 processing and/or exchange has failed so far. In particular, if the message was supposed to be delivered
2187 to a consumer, it would be delivered even though a warning was issued. Other related messages in the
2188 conversation or MEP can be generated and exchanged in spite of this problem.

2189 The **failure** value indicates that the processing of a message did not proceed as expected, and cannot be
2190 considered successful. If, in spite of this, the message payload is in a state of being delivered, the default
2191 behavior is not to deliver it, unless an agreement states otherwise (see OpCtx-ErrorHandling). This error
2192 does not presume the ability of the MSH to process other messages, although the conversation or the
2193 MEP instance this message was involved in is at risk of being invalid.

2194 **6.2.6. eb>Error/@refToMessageInError**

2195 This OPTIONAL attribute indicates the MessageId of the message in error, for which this error is raised.

2196 **6.2.7. eb>Error/@shortDescription**

2197 This OPTIONAL attribute provides a short description of the error that can be reported in a log, in order to
2198 facilitate readability.

2199 **6.2.8. eb>Error/Description**

2200 This OPTIONAL element provides a narrative description of the error in the language defined by the
2201 xml:lang attribute. The content of this element is left to implementation-specific decisions.

2202 **6.2.9. eb>Error/ErrorDetail**

2203 This OPTIONAL element provides additional details about the context in which the error occurred. For
2204 example, it may be an exception trace.

2205 **6.3. ebMS Error Message**

2206 When reported as messages, ebMS Errors are packaged as ebMS Signal Messages. Several eb>Error
2207 elements MAY be present under eb:SignalMessage. If this is the case, and if eb:RefToMessageId is
2208 present as a child of eb:SignalMessage/eb:MessageInfo, then every eb>Error element MUST be related to

2209 the ebMS message (message-in-error) identified by eb:RefToMessageId.
2210 If the element eb:SignalMessage/eb:MessageInfo does not contain eb:RefToMessageId, then the eb:Error
2211 element(s) MUST NOT be related to a particular ebMS message.
2212 For an example of an ebXML Error Message, see Section 5.3.3.

2213 6.4. Extensibility of the Error Element

2214 6.4.1. Adding new ebMS Errors

2215 The errorCode attribute (eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:Error/@errorCode) must be an identifier that
2216 is unique within the scope of an MSH. ebMS Errors in addition to those specified here may be added by
2217 creating new errorCode values. The value of the errorCode attribute must begin with the five characters
2218 "EBMS:".

2219 6.5. Generating ebMS Errors

2220 This specification identifies key ebMS Errors, as well as the conditions under which they must be
2221 generated. Some of these error-raising conditions include the escalation as ebMS Errors of either Faults
2222 or Errors generated by Reliability and Security modules. These modules could be those contained in the
2223 MSH raising the Error, or those contained in a remote MSH communicating with the MSH raising the
2224 Error. Except for some cases defined in this specification, Error escalation policies are left to an
2225 agreement between users, represented in the processing mode of an MSH (P-Mode.ErrorHandling).

2226 6.6. Error Reporting

2227 There are three primary means of Error Reporting:

- 2228 • Reporting with Fault Sending: An MSH may generate a SOAP Fault for reporting ebMS
2229 processing errors of severity "failure", which prevent further message processing. This Fault must
2230 comply with SOAP Fault processing, i.e. be sent back as an HTTP response in case the message
2231 in error was over an HTTP request. In case of ebMS processing errors (see Section 6.7.1), the
2232 Fault message MUST also include the eb:SignalMessage/eb:Error element in the eb:Messaging
2233 header.
- 2234 • Reporting with Notification: An out-of-band transfer of error information from MSH to some entity
2235 (message producer, consumer, or any other entity, be it local or remote). In case of notification to
2236 the message Producer or Consumer, such reporting action is abstracted by the "Notify" operation
2237 in the messaging model.
- 2238 • Error message: an ebMS signal message sent from one MSH to another, which contains at least
2239 one eb:Error element. Such a reporting action is modeled by Send and Receive abstract
2240 operations over such a message. The reporting message must always be combined with a SOAP
2241 Fault unless the severity is "warning".

2242 **Example of different options in reporting errors raised on a Sending MSH:** Some error detected on a
2243 submitted message and before it is even packaged, would normally be locally notified to the message
2244 Producer, and not even reported to the destination MSH. However, in case this message was part of a
2245 larger exchange that is holding its state waiting for completion on the receiving side, the preferred policy
2246 could state that the message-in-error be also reported (using an error message) to the Receiving MSH. If
2247 the Receiving MSH is getting its messages as responses to PullRequest signals, such ebMS errors can
2248 be transmitted as responses to these signals. If user messages are pushed sender to receiver, it could be
2249 decided that errors generated on the sender side will be pushed like any regular message.

2250 **Example of different options in reporting errors raised on a Receiving MSH:** If a Receiving MSH
2251 detects an error in a received message, the reporting policy may vary depending on the context and the
2252 ability of parties to process such errors. For example, the error-raising Receiving MSH may just notify its
2253 own Consumer party, or send back an error message to the Sending MSH, or both. The usual common
2254 requirement in all these cases, is that the error be reported somehow, and complies with the eb:Error
2255 element structure.

2256 Appendix E shows possible options for combining error reporting with ebMS MEPs, when binding to a two-

2257 way protocol such as HTTP. It also shows how these combinations can be controlled with P-Mode
 2258 parameters.

2258 6.7. Standard ebMS Errors

2259 This section defines the standard error codes expected to be generated and processed by a conformant
 2260 MSH. They are segmented according to the stage of processing they are likely to occur: during reliable
 2261 message processing, security processing, and general ebMS processing.

2260 6.7.1. ebMS Processing Errors

2261 The table below describes the Errors that may occur within the ebMS Module itself (ebMS Errors that are
 2262 not Escalated Errors), i.e. with @origin="ebms". These errors MUST be supported by an MSH, meaning
 2263 generated appropriately, or understood by an MSH when reported to it.

Error Code	Short Description	Recommended Severity	Category Value	Description or Semantics
EBMS:0001	ValueNotRecognized	failure	Content	Although the message document is well formed and schema valid, some element/attribute contains a value that could not be recognized and therefore could not be used by the MSH.
EBMS:0002	FeatureNotSupported	warning	Content	Although the message document is well formed and schema valid, some element/attribute value cannot be processed as expected because the related feature is not supported by the MSH.
EBMS:0003	ValueInconsistent	failure	Content	Although the message document is well formed and schema valid, some element/attribute value is inconsistent either with the content of other element/attribute, or with the processing mode of the MSH, or with the normative requirements of the ebMS specification.
EBMS:0004	Other	failure	Content	
EBMS:0005	ConnectionFailure	failure	Communication	The MSH is experiencing temporary or permanent failure in trying to open a transport connection with a remote MSH.
EBMS:0006	EmptyMessagePartitionChannel	warning	Communication	There is no message available for pulling from this MPC at this moment.
EBMS:0007	MimeInconsistency	failure	Unpackaging	The use of MIME is not consistent with the required usage in this specification.
EBMS:0008	FeatureNotSupported	failure	Unpackaging	Although the message document is well formed and schema valid, the presence or absence of some element/ attribute is not consistent with the capability of the MSH, with respect to supported features.
EBMS:0009	InvalidHeader	failure	Unpackaging	The ebMS header is either not well formed as an XML document, or does not conform to the ebMS packaging rules.

EBMS:0010	ProcessingModeMismatch	failure	Processing	The ebMS header or another header (e.g. reliability, security) expected by the MSH is not compatible with the expected content, based on the associated P-Mode.
EBMS:0011	ExternalPayloadError	failure	Content	The MSH is unable to resolve an external payload reference (i.e. a Part that is not contained within the ebMS Message, as identified by a PartInfo/href URI).

2264

2265 6.7.2. Security Processing Errors

2266 The table below describes the Errors that originate within the Security Module, i.e. with @origin="security".
 2267 These errors MUST be escalated by an MSH, meaning generated appropriately, or understood by an
 2268 MSH when reported to it.

Error Code	Short Description	Recommended Severity	Category Value	Description or Semantics
EBMS:0101	FailedAuthentication	failure	Processing	The signature in the Security header intended for the "ebms" SOAP actor, could not be validated by the Security module.
EBMS:0102	FailedDecryption	failure	Processing	The encrypted data reference the Security header intended for the "ebms" SOAP actor could not be decrypted by the Security Module.
EBMS:0103	PolicyNoncompliance	failure	Processing	The processor determined that the message's security methods, parameters, scope or other security policy-level requirements or agreements were not satisfied.

2269

2270 6.7.3. Reliable Messaging Errors

2271 The table below describes the Errors that originate within the Reliable Messaging Module, i.e. with
 2272 @origin="reliability". These errors MUST be escalated by an MSH, meaning generated appropriately, or
 2273 understood by an MSH when reported to it.

Error Code	Short Description	Recommended Severity	Category Value	Description or Semantics
EBMS:0201	DysfunctionalReliability	failure	Processing	Some reliability function as implemented by the Reliability module, is not operational, or the reliability state associated with this message sequence is not valid.
EBMS:0202	DeliveryFailure	failure	Communication	Although the message was sent under Guaranteed delivery requirement, the Reliability module could not get assurance that the message was properly delivered, in spite of resending efforts.

2274

2275

7. Security Module

2276 The ebXML Messaging Service, by its very nature, presents certain security risks. A Messaging Service
2277 may be at risk by means of:

- 2278 • Unauthorized access
- 2279 • Data integrity and/or confidentiality attacks (e.g. through man-in-the-middle attacks)
- 2280 • Denial-of-Service and spoofing

2281 Each security risk is described in detail in the ebXML Technical Architecture Risk Assessment Technical
2282 Report [ebRISK].

2283 Each of these security risks may be addressed in whole, or in part, by the application of one, or a
2284 combination, of the countermeasures described in this section. This specification describes a set of
2285 profiles, or combinations of selected countermeasures, selected to address key risks based upon
2286 commonly available technologies. Each of the specified profiles includes a description of the risks that are
2287 not addressed.

2288 Application of countermeasures SHOULD be balanced against an assessment of the inherent risks and
2289 the value of the asset(s) that might be placed at risk.

7.1. Security Element

2291 Web Services Security 1.0 [WSS10] or 1.1 [WSS11] can be utilized to secure an ebMS message. Web
2292 Services Security provides three mechanisms to secure messages: ability to send security tokens as part
2293 of a message, message integrity and message confidentiality.

2294 Zero or one Security elements per target, belonging to the Web Services Security-defined namespace,
2295 MAY be present as a child of the SOAP Header. The Security element MUST be namespace qualified in
2296 accordance with Web Services Security. The structure and content of the Security element MUST
2297 conform to the Web Services Security specification and the Web Services Security SOAP Messages with
2298 Attachments Profile [SOAPATTACH].

2299 To promote interoperability the security element MUST conform to the WS-I Basic Security Profile Version
2300 1.0 [WSIBSP10], and WS-I Attachments Profile Version 1.0 [WSIAP10].

2301 Note

2302 An MSH implementation may elect to leverage WSS 1.0 and/or or WSS 1.1. Note that the
2303 security of attachment defined in WSS 1.1 is not only applicable to SOAP 1.1; security of
2304 attachment is orthogonal to the SOAP version, even though all examples in the WSS 1.1
2305 specification depict only the SOAP 1.1 variant when securing attachments. In other
2306 words, an MSH may secure a SOAP 1.2 with Attachments message in the same way a
2307 SOAP 1.1 with Attachment can be secured in WSS 1.1. Refer to Section C for complete
2308 details of the ebMS SOAP binding.

2309 This specification outlines the use of Web Services Security x.509 Certificate Token Profile [WSS10-
2310 X509] or [WSS11-X509] and the Web Services Security Username Token Profile [WSS10-USER] or
2311 [WSS11-USER]. An MSH implementation MAY choose to support other Web Services Security Profiles.

7.2. Signing Messages

2313 Signing of ebMS Messages is defined in Web Services Security [WSS10] and [WSS11]. Support for WSS
2314 X.509 Certificate Token Profile is REQUIRED to sign a message.

2315 It is REQUIRED that compliant MSH implementations support Detached Signatures as defined by the
2316 XML Signature Specification [XMLDSIG].

2317 An MSH implementation MAY support Enveloped Signatures as defined by the XML Signature
2318 Specification. Enveloped Signatures add an additional level of security in detecting the addition of XML
2319 elements to the SOAP Header. The use of Enveloped Signatures may limit the ability of intermediaries to
2320 process messages.

2321 To ensure the integrity of the user-specified payload data and ebMS message headers it is

2322 RECOMMENDED that the entire eb:Messaging Container Element and the SOAP Body be included in the
2323 signature.

2324 **7.3. Signing SOAP with Attachments Messages**

2325 Application payloads that are built in conformance with the [SOAPATTACH] specification may be
2326 signed. To sign a SOAP with Attachment message the Security element must be built in accordance with
2327 WSS 1.1.

2328 It is REQUIRED that compliant MSH implementations support the Attachment-Content-Only transform. It
2329 is RECOMMENDED that compliant MSH implementations support the Attachment-Complete transform.

2330 To ensure the integrity of the user-specified payload data and ebMS headers it is RECOMMENDED that
2331 the entire eb:Messaging Container Element, and all MIME Body parts of included payloads are included in
2332 the signature.

2333 **7.4. Encrypting Messages**

2334 Encryption of ebMS Messages is defined in Web Services Security [WSS10] and [WSS11]. Support for
2335 Web Services Security X.509 Certificate Token Profile is REQUIRED to encrypt message.

2336 An MSH Implementation may encrypt the eb:Messaging Container Element. It may also encrypt select
2337 child elements of the eb:Messaging header, leaving other elements unencrypted. For example, the
2338 eb:PartyInfo section may be used to aid in message routing before decryption of other elements has
2339 occurred. Therefore, when third-party routing of a message is expected, it is RECOMMENDED that the
2340 eb:PartyInfo section not be encrypted. To ensure the confidentiality of the user-specified payload data, it is
2341 RECOMMENDED that the SOAP Body be encrypted.

2342 **7.5. Encrypting SOAP with Attachments Messages**

2343 Application payloads that are built in conformance with the [SOAPATTACH] specification may be
2344 encrypted. To encrypt a SOAP with Attachment message the Security element must be built in
2345 accordance to WSS 1.1. To ensure the confidentiality of the user-specified payload data it is
2346 RECOMMENDED that the MIME Body parts of included payloads be encrypted.

2347 **7.6. Signing and Encrypting Messages**

2348 When both signature and encryption are required of the MSH, the message MUST be signed prior to
2349 being encrypted.

2350 **7.7. Security Token Authentication**

2351 In constrained environments where management of XML digital signatures is not possible, an
2352 authentication alternative that is based on Web Services Security Username Token Profile is
2353 RECOMMENDED to be supported, and MAY include support for wsse:PasswordText-type passwords.
2354 The value of the wsse:UserName element is an implementation issue. The "user" may represent the MSH
2355 itself, or may represent a party using the MSH. In the latter case, there is no requirement that this user
2356 name be identical to some eb:From/PartyId value.

2357 An MSH MAY support other types of Security Tokens, as allowed by the WS-Security family of standards.

2358 **7.8. Security Policy Errors**

2359 A responding MSH MAY respond with an error if a received ebMS message does not meet the security
2360 policy of the responding MSH. For example, a security policy might indicate that messages with unsigned
2361 parts of the SOAP Body or eb:Messaging Container element are unauthorized for further processing. If a
2362 responding MSH receives a message with unsigned data within the SOAP Body and error MAY be
2363 returned to the initiating MSH.

7.9. Secured Message Examples

7.9.1. Digitally Signed and Encrypted ebXML Message

```

2366 Mime-Version: 1.0
2367 Content-Type: text/xml
2368 Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
2369 SOAPAction: ""
2370 Content-Length: 7205
2371
2372 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2373 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
2374     xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3c.org/2001/XMLSchema"
2375     xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2376     xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
2377     http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
2378   <S11:Header xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-
2379     msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">
2380     <eb:Messaging id="ebMessage" S11:mustUnderstand="1">
2381       <eb:UserMessage>
2382         <eb:MessageInfo>
2383           <eb:Timestamp>2006-10-31T17:36:20.656Z</eb:Timestamp>
2384           <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@msh-server.example.com</eb:MessageId>
2385           <eb:RefToMessageId>UUID-1@msh-
2386     server.example.com</eb:RefToMessageId>
2387         </eb:MessageInfo>
2388         <eb:PartyInfo>
2389           <eb:From>
2390             <eb:PartyId>uri:msh-server.example.com</eb:PartyId>
2391             <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Buyer</eb:Role>
2392           </eb:From>
2393           <eb:To>
2394             <eb:PartyId type="someType">QRS543</eb:PartyId>
2395             <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Seller</eb:Role>
2396           </eb:To>
2397         </eb:PartyInfo>
2398         <eb:CollaborationInfo>
2399           <eb:AgreementRef>http://msh-
2400     server.example.com/cpa/123456</eb:AgreementRef>
2401           <eb:Service type="someType">QuoteToCollect</eb:Service>
2402           <eb:Action>NewPurchaseOrder</eb:Action>
2403           <eb:ConversationId>2a81ffbd-0d3d-4cbd-8601-
2404     d916e0ed2fe2</eb:ConversationId>
2405         </eb:CollaborationInfo>
2406         <eb:MessageProperties>
2407           <eb:Property
2408     name="ProcessInst">PurchaseOrder:123456</eb:Property>
2409           <eb:Property name="ContextID">987654321</eb:Property>
2410         </eb:MessageProperties>
2411         <eb:PayloadInfo>
2412           <eb:PartInfo href="#enc">
2413             <eb:Description xml:lang="en-US">PO Image</eb:Description>
2414           </eb:PartInfo>
2415         </eb:PayloadInfo>
2416       </eb:UserMessage>
2417     </eb:Messaging>
2418     <wsse:Security S11:mustUnderstand="1"
2419     xmlns:wsse="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2420     wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd"
2421     xmlns:wsu="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2422     wssecurity-utility-1.0.xsd">
2423       <wsse:BinarySecurityToken
2424     EncodingType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2425     wss-soap-message-security-1.0#Base64Binary"
2426     ValueType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2427     wss-x509-token-profile-1.0#X509v3"
2428     wsu:Id="signingCert">...</wsse:BinarySecurityToken>
2429       <wsse:BinarySecurityToken
2430     EncodingType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2431     wss-soap-message-security-1.0#Base64Binary"
2432     ValueType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2433     wss-x509-token-profile-1.0#X509v3"
2434     wsu:Id="encryptionCert">...</wsse:BinarySecurityToken>
2435     <enc:EncryptedKey xmlns:enc="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#">

```

```

2436         <enc:EncryptionMethod
2437 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#rsa-1_5"
2438 xmlns="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2439 wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd"/>
2440         <KeyInfo xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
2441           <wsse:SecurityTokenReference>
2442             <wsse:Reference URI="#encryptionCert"/>
2443           </wsse:SecurityTokenReference>
2444         </KeyInfo>
2445         <CipherData xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#">
2446           <CipherValue>F3HmZ2Ldyn0umLCx/8Q9B9e8Oos1Jx9i9hOWQjh6JWYqDLbd
2447 g0QVFiVt1LVjazlThS9m9rkRtpkhCUIY1xjFKtDsuIIAW8cLZv7IHkVoDtQ7ihJc8hYIIEESX9qZN65Jgy
2448 Aa3BYgW9ipjGHtNgZ9RzUdzKdeY74DFm27R6m8b0=</CipherValue>
2449         </CipherData>
2450         <ReferenceList xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#">
2451           <DataReference URI="#enc"/>
2452         </ReferenceList>
2453       </enc:EncryptedKey>
2454       <ds:Signature xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
2455         <ds:SignedInfo>
2456           <ds:CanonicalizationMethod
2457 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
2458           <ds:SignatureMethod
2459 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1"/>
2460           <ds:Reference URI="#ebMessage">
2461             <ds:Transforms>
2462               <ds:Transform
2463 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
2464               </ds:Transforms>
2465             <ds:DigestMethod
2466 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1"/>
2467             <ds:DigestValue>Ae0PLUKJUUnUyAMXkLQD/WwKiFiI=</ds:DigestVal
2468 ue>
2469             </ds:Reference>
2470             <ds:Reference URI="#body">
2471               <ds:Transforms>
2472                 <ds:Transform
2473 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#">
2474                 </ds:Transforms>
2475               <ds:DigestMethod
2476 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1"/>
2477               <ds:DigestValue>kNY6X7LnRTwxXXBzSw07tcA0KSU=</ds:DigestVal
2478 ue>
2479               </ds:Reference>
2480             </ds:SignedInfo>
2481           <ds:SignatureValue>
2482             T24okA0MUh5iBNMG6tk8QAKZ+lFMmY1rcPnkOr9j3fHRGM2qqUnoBydOTnClcE
2483 MzPZbnlhdn
2484             YZYmabllqa4N5ynLjw1M4kp0uMip9hapijwL67aBnUeHiFmUau0x9DBOdKZTVa
2485 1QQ92106ge
2486             j2YPDt3VKI1LLT2c804TfayGvuY= </ds:SignatureValue>
2487           <ds:KeyInfo>
2488             <wsse:SecurityTokenReference
2489 xmlns:wsse="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-
2490 200401-wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd">
2491               <wsse:Reference URI="#signingCert"/>
2492             </wsse:SecurityTokenReference>
2493           </ds:KeyInfo>
2494         </ds:Signature>
2495       </wsse:Security>
2496     </S11:Header>
2497     <S11:Body wsu:Id="body"
2498 xmlns:wsu="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2499 wssecurity-utility-1.0.xsd">
2500       <EncryptedData Id="enc" Type="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#Content"
2501 xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#">
2502         <EncryptionMethod
2503 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#tripledes-cbc"/>
2504         <CipherData>
2505           <CipherValue>tjOgUPMmQwd6hXiHuv142swqv4dTYiBfmg8u1SuFVRC3yfNlokshv
2506 oxs1/qQoqN1prDiSOxsxsFvg1la7dehJMWb0owuvU2deleKr5KPCsApnG+kTvNrtg==</CipherValue>
2507         </CipherData>
2508       </EncryptedData>
2509     </S11:Body>
2510 </S11:Envelope>

```

2511

2512 7.9.2. Digitally Signed and Encrypted ebXML SOAP with Attachments 2513 Message

```
2514 Mime-Version: 1.0
2515 Content-Type: multipart/related; type="text/xml";
2516     boundary="-----_Part_2_6825397.1130520599536"
2517 SOAPAction: ""
2518 Content-Length: 7860
2519
2520 -----_Part_2_6825397.1130520599536
2521 Content-Type: text/xml
2522 Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
2523
2524 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2525 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
2526     xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3c.org/2001/XMLSchema"
2527     xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2528     xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
2529     http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
2530     <S11:Header xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-
2531     msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">
2532         <eb:Messaging id="ebMessage" S11:mustUnderstand="1">
2533             <eb:UserMessage>
2534                 <eb:MessageInfo>
2535                     <eb:Timestamp>2006-10-28T17:29:59.119Z</eb:Timestamp>
2536                     <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@msh-server.example.com</eb:MessageId>
2537                     <eb:RefToMessageId>UUID-1@msh-
2538     server.example.com</eb:RefToMessageId>
2539                 </eb:MessageInfo>
2540                 <eb:PartyInfo>
2541                     <eb:From>
2542                         <eb:PartyId>uri:msh-server.example.com</eb:PartyId>
2543                         <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Buyer</eb:Role>
2544                     </eb:From>
2545                     <eb:To>
2546                         <eb:PartyId type="someType">QRS543</eb:PartyId>
2547                         <eb:Role>http://example.org/roles/Seller</eb:Role>
2548                     </eb:To>
2549                 </eb:PartyInfo>
2550                 <eb:CollaborationInfo>
2551                     <eb:AgreementRef>http://msh-
2552     server.example.com/cpa/123456</eb:AgreementRef>
2553                     <eb:Service type="someType">QuoteToCollect</eb:Service>
2554                     <eb:Action>NewPurchaseOrder</eb:Action>
2555                     <eb:ConversationId>782a5c5a-9dad-4cd9-9bbe-
2556     94c0d737f22b</eb:ConversationId>
2557                 </eb:CollaborationInfo>
2558                 <eb:MessageProperties>
2559                     <eb:Property
2560     name="ProcessInst">PurchaseOrder:123456</eb:Property>
2561                     <eb:Property name="ContextID">987654321</eb:Property>
2562                 </eb:MessageProperties>
2563                 <eb:PayloadInfo>
2564                     <eb:PartInfo href="cid:PO_Image@example.com">
2565                         <eb:Description xml:lang="en-US">PO Image</eb:Description>
2566                     </eb:PartInfo>
2567                 </eb:PayloadInfo>
2568             </eb:UserMessage>
2569         </eb:Messaging>
2570         <wsse:Security S11:mustUnderstand="1"
2571             xmlns:wsse="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2572     wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd"
2573             xmlns:wsu="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2574     wssecurity-utility-1.0.xsd">
2575             <wsse:BinarySecurityToken
2576                 EncodingType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2577     wss-soap-message-security-1.0#Base64Binary"
2578                 ValueType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2579     wss-x509-token-profile-1.0#X509v3"
2580                 wsu:Id="signingCert">...</wsse:BinarySecurityToken>
2581             <wsse:BinarySecurityToken
```

```

2582         EncodingType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2583 wss-soap-message-security-1.0#Base64Binary"
2584         ValueType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2585 wss-x509-token-profile-1.0#X509v3"
2586         wsu:Id="encryptionCert">...</wsse:BinarySecurityToken>
2587         <enc:EncryptedKey xmlns:enc="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#">
2588             <enc:EncryptionMethod
2589 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#rsa-1_5"
2590             xmlns="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-
2591 wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd"/>
2592             <KeyInfo xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
2593                 <wsse:SecurityTokenReference>
2594                     <wsse:Reference URI="#encryptionCert"/>
2595                 </wsse:SecurityTokenReference>
2596             </KeyInfo>
2597             <CipherData xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#">
2598                 <CipherValue>jJRbQBjzYpfdCkPk5F7jUoFjw6Ls6DQ8D9sdI62fwjW9Um/g9
2599 QfivLeVzvSndgnthfEBC1Z6loKiuEF5/Ztw/tFrRgkboR7EBG5XaJUnt0rt8iCChy4PfxCEhH1KjFgTJhU
2600 bXxNW3FfxSLkouCn2qIBDrJqwZXAistt29JrANcc=</CipherValue>
2601             </CipherData>
2602             <ReferenceList xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#">
2603                 <DataReference URI="#encrypted-attachment"/>
2604             </ReferenceList>
2605         </enc:EncryptedKey>
2606         <EncryptedData Id="encrypted-attachment" MimeType="image/jpeg"
2607             Type="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/oasis-wss-SwAProfile-
2608 1.1#Attachment-Content-Only"
2609             xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#">
2610             <EncryptionMethod
2611 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmlenc#tripleDES-cbc"/>
2612             <CipherData>
2613                 <CipherReference URI="cid:PO_Image@example.com">
2614                     <Transforms>
2615                         <Transform
2616                             Algorithm="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/oasis-
2617 wss-SwAProfile-1.1#Attachment-Ciphertext-Transform"
2618                             xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#" />
2619                         </Transforms>
2620                     </CipherReference>
2621                 </CipherData>
2622             </EncryptedData>
2623             <ds:Signature xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
2624                 <ds:SignedInfo>
2625                     <ds:CanonicalizationMethod
2626 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#" />
2627                     <ds:SignatureMethod
2628 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-sha1" />
2629                     <ds:Reference URI="#ebMessage">
2630                         <ds:Transforms>
2631                             <ds:Transform
2632 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#" />
2633                         </ds:Transforms>
2634                         <ds:DigestMethod
2635 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1" />
2636                         <ds:DigestValue>UISuIg5eVxy3FL/4yCrZoEzrTM=</ds:DigestVal
2637 ue>
2638                     </ds:Reference>
2639                     <ds:Reference URI="cid:PO_Image@example.com">
2640                         <ds:Transforms>
2641                             <ds:Transform
2642                                 Algorithm="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/oasis-
2643 wss-SwAProfile-1.1#Attachment-Content-Signature-Transform"
2644                                 />
2645                             </ds:Transforms>
2646                             <ds:DigestMethod
2647 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1" />
2648                             <ds:DigestValue>R4hCV4K4I5QZdSsrP4KrLu46hFo=</ds:DigestVal
2649 ue>
2650                         </ds:Reference>
2651                     </ds:SignedInfo>
2652                     <ds:SignatureValue>
2653                         BGnJV/b7EUbAesn7GmNhZ8yYN6Zo06uz29E5r9GHxDW+MUH4wksgA654w+sB0r
2654 Wl8xNranag
2655                         3dhKoHbaRERzYHDGq1VfIRqgEwOrHwhz4h7uoLX4yxOU6G9T/gily67Q3pENGP
2656                         mVowzoppHm
2657                         /yd/A2T0+v4vso20aJiSieEIZSQ= </ds:SignatureValue>

```

```

2658         <ds:KeyInfo>
2659             <wsse:SecurityTokenReference
2660                 xmlns:wsse="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-
2661 200401-wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd">
2662                 <wsse:Reference URI="#signingCert"/>
2663             </wsse:SecurityTokenReference>
2664         </ds:KeyInfo>
2665     </ds:Signature>
2666 </wsse:Security>
2667 </S11:Header>
2668 <S11:Body/>
2669 </S11:Envelope>
2670
2671 -----_Part_2_6825397.1130520599536
2672 Content-Type: application/octet-stream
2673 Content-Transfer-Encoding: base64
2674 Content-Id: <PO_Image@example.com>
2675 Content-Description: WSS XML Encryption message; type="image/jpeg"
2676
2677 VEhmwb4FHFhqQH8m5PKqVu8H0/bq2yUF
2678
2679 -----_Part_2_6825397.1130520599536--

```

2680 7.9.3. Digitally Signed Receipt Signal Message

2681 The following is an example of a signed Receipt for the User Message shown above in Section 7.9.1.
2682 Note the correlations to that message in the eb:RefToMessageId and ds:Reference elements.

```

2683 Mime-Version: 1.0
2684 Content-Type: text/xml
2685 Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
2686 SOAPAction: ""
2687 Content-Length: 7205
2688
2689 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2690 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
2691     xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
2692     xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2693     xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
2694 http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
2695     <S11:Header xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-
2696 msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">
2697         <eb:Messaging id="ThisebMessage" S11:mustUnderstand="1">
2698
2699             <eb:SignalMessage>
2700                 <eb:MessageInfo>
2701                     <eb:Timestamp>2006-10-31T18:02:37.429Z</eb:Timestamp>
2702                     <eb:MessageId>UUID-3@msh-server.example.com</eb:MessageId>
2703                     <eb:RefToMessageId>UUID-2@msh-server.example.com</eb:RefToMessageId>
2704                 </eb:MessageInfo>
2705
2706                 <eb:Receipt>
2707                     <ebbpsig:NonRepudiationInformation
2708                         xmlns:ebbpsig="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-bp/ebbp-signals-2.0"
2709                         xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
2710                         <ebbpsig:MessagePartNRInformation>
2711                             <ebbpsig:MessagePartIdentifier>ebMessage</ebbpsig:MessagePartIdentif
2712 ier>
2713                             <ds:Reference URI="#ebMessage">
2714                                 <ds:Transforms>
2715                                     <ds:Transform Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-
2716 c14n#"/>
2717                                 </ds:Transforms>
2718                                 <ds:DigestMethod
2719 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1"/>
2720                                 <ds:DigestValue>Ae0PLUKJUUnUyAMXkLQD/WwKiFiI=</ds:DigestValue>
2721                             </ds:Reference>
2722                         </ebbpsig:MessagePartNRInformation>
2723                         <ebbpsig:MessagePartNRInformation>
2724                             <ebbpsig:MessagePartIdentifier>body</ebbpsig:MessagePartIdentifier>
2725                             <ds:Reference URI="#body">
2726                                 <ds:Transforms>
2727                                     <ds:Transform Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-
2728 c14n#"/>
2729                                 </ds:Transforms>

```

```

2730         <ds:DigestMethod
2731 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1"/>
2732         <ds:DigestValue>kNY6X7LnRTwxXXBzSw07tcA0KSU=</ds:DigestValue>
2733         </ds:Reference>
2734         </ebbpsig:MessagePartNRInformation>
2735         </ebbpsig:NonRepudiationInformation>
2736     </eb:Receipt>
2737 </eb:SignalMessage>
2738
2739 </eb:Messaging>
2740
2741     <wsse:Security S11:mustUnderstand="1"
2742     xmlns:wsse="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2743 wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd"
2744     xmlns:wsu="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2745 wssecurity-utility-1.0.xsd">
2746         <wsse:BinarySecurityToken
2747         EncodingType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2748 soap-message-security-1.0#Base64Binary"
2749         ValueType="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-x509-
2750 token-profile-1.0#X509v3"
2751         wsu:Id="signingCert">...</wsse:BinarySecurityToken>
2752
2753         <ds:Signature xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
2754             <ds:SignedInfo>
2755                 <ds:CanonicalizationMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-
2756 c14n#"/>
2757                 <ds:SignatureMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#rsa-
2758 sha1"/>
2759                 <ds:Reference URI="#ThisebMessage">
2760                     <ds:Transforms>
2761                         <ds:Transform Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#"/>
2762                     </ds:Transforms>
2763                     <ds:DigestMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#sha1"/>
2764                     <ds:DigestValue>Ae0PLUKJUnUyAMXkLQD/WwKiFiI=</ds:DigestValue>
2765                 </ds:Reference>
2766             </ds:SignedInfo>
2767             <ds:SignatureValue>T24okA0MUh5iBNMG6tk8QAKZ+lFMmYlrcPnkOr9j3fHRGM2qqUnoB
2768 yd0TnClcEMzPZbnlhdNYZYmabllqa4N5ynLjwlm4kp0uMip9hapij
2769 wL67aBnUeHiFmUau0x9DBOdKZTValQQ92106gej2YPDt3VKI1LLT2
2770 c804TfayGvuY= </ds:SignatureValue>
2771
2772             <ds:KeyInfo>
2773                 <wsse:SecurityTokenReference
2774                 xmlns:wsse="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2775 wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd">
2776                     <wsse:Reference URI="#signingCert"/>
2777                 </wsse:SecurityTokenReference>
2778             </ds:KeyInfo>
2779         </ds:Signature>
2780     </wsse:Security>
2781 </S11:Header>
2782 <S11:Body/>
</S11:Envelope>

```

2783 7.10. Message Authorization

2784

2785 Message authorization is defined here as authorizing the processing of a message in conformance with
2786 the parameters of the P-Mode associated with this message. This includes authorizing the access to
2787 some ebMS resources such as:

- 2788 • "delivery" resources as identified by eb:Service and eb:Action
- 2789 • Message Partition Channel (MPC) that a Pull signal is accessing for pulling messages.

2790 This is different from simply authorizing a received message for further processing by the MSH, which can
2791 be achieved by processing the Security header described earlier in Section 7, regardless of ebMS-specific
2792 resources claimed by the message. A message could successfully be authenticated by the security
2793 module (see Section 4.1), yet not be authorized to pull from a particular MPC, or to effect delivery of data
2794 to a particular Service. For implementations in which there is limited interaction between processing
2795 modules of the MSH - e.g. in case of an architecture based on composing SOAP nodes, the Security
2796 header MAY be consumed by the WSS module before reaching the ebMS message processor. (Even if

2797 the header is forwarded, it may be impractical to require an ebMS processor implementation to parse it.)
 2798 This specification provides a resource-level authorization mechanism. Since any resource a message may
 2799 claim access to is identified by the P-Mode associated with the message, this is equivalent to authorizing
 2800 the association of the message with the P-Mode.

2801 For this purpose, a second wsse:Security header, which contains only an authentication token, MAY be
 2802 present. This specification describes in particular one token option, not exclusively of others: the
 2803 wsse:UsernameToken profile. This secondary Security header may itself be secured (e.g. encrypted) by
 2804 the main Security header.

2805 In the P-Mode model (see Appendix D) such tokens are represented as the PMode.Initiator.Authorization
 2806 parameter set (for authorizing the initiator of an MEP) and the PMode.Responder.Authorization parameter
 2807 set.

2808 This header is not intended to be processed or consumed by the same WSS module as the "main"
 2809 Security header, but is targeted further along to the "ebms" actor - typically a role played by the ebMS
 2810 header processor, which has knowledge of the association between these tokens and the P-Modes that
 2811 govern the message processing.

2812 The following example shows a PullRequest message for which this type of authorization is required. Both
 2813 security headers (shown here as a SOAP1.1 message) are present, with one of them - the secondary
 2814 header - targeted to the "ebms" actor. This Pull signal can effect message delivery from MPC
 2815 "http://msh.example.com/mpc123" only if its credentials match the authorization parameters of at least
 2816 one P-Mode associated with pulling messages on this MPC.

```

2817 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2818 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
2819
2820   <S11:Header
2821     xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/"
2822     xmlns:wsse="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-
2823 wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd">
2824
2825     <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1"
2826 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2827 xsi:schemaLocation="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/
2828 http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd">
2829       <eb:SignalMessage>
2830         <eb:MessageInfo>
2831           <eb:Timestamp>2006-07-25T12:19:05</eb:Timestamp>
2832           <eb:MessageId>UUID-2@initiator.example.com</eb:MessageId>
2833         </eb:MessageInfo>
2834         <eb:PullRequest mpc="http://msh.example.com/mpc123" />
2835       </eb:SignalMessage>
2836     </eb:Messaging>
2837
2838     <wsse:Security S11:mustUnderstand="1">
2839       <!-- main security header -->
2840     </wsse:Security>
2841
2842     <wsse:Security S11:mustUnderstand="1" actor="ebms"
2843 xmlns:wsu="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-
2844 utility-1.0.xsd">
2845       <!-- authorization security header (here non encrypted) -->
2846       <wsse:UsernameToken wsu:Id="ebms-1234">
2847         <wsse:Username>acme</wsse:Username>
2848         <wsse:Password Type="...">xyz123</wsse:Password>
2849         <wsu:Created> ... </wsu:Created>
2850       </wsse:UsernameToken>
2851     </wsse:Security>
2852
2853   </S11:Header>
2854   <S11:Body />
2855 </S11:Envelope>
  
```

2856 Permission to use a P-Mode for processing a received message is granted or denied at the time the P-
 2857 Mode authorization parameters are compared with the credentials in the message.

2858 **7.11. Securing the PullRequest Signal**

2859 **7.11.1. Authentication**

2860 A Sending MSH MUST be able to authenticate a Receiving MSH that sends a PullRequest. When
2861 authentication is required for a particular Receiving MSH, it is RECOMMENDED that the Sending MSH
2862 use security at the SOAP protocol level (WSS). In case a Receiving MSH is not able to use SOAP level
2863 security, other authentication mechanisms MAY be used, e.g. the HTTP Basic or Digest Access
2864 Authentication schemes [RFC2617].

2865 **7.11.2. Authorization**

2866 The processing of a PullRequest signal received by a Sending MSH MAY be authorized based on any of
2867 the following, or combination of the following, mechanisms:

- 2868 (a) Digital signature validation by the Security (WSS) module (see Sections 7.2 and 7.3),
- 2869 (b) A WSS authentication token addressed to the "default" actor/role (see Section 7.7).
- 2870 (c) A WSS authentication token addressed to the "ebms" actor/role (see Section 7.10).
- 2871 (d) A transfer-protocol-level identity-authentication mechanism, such as those described in
2872 Section 7.11.1.

2873 **7.11.3. Preventing Replay Attacks**

2874 Malignant duplication and reuse of a PullRequest signals could lead to transfer of user messages to an
2875 unauthorized destination in spite of valid claims in the signal message. In order to prevent this attack, it is
2876 RECOMMENDED to (1) use At-Most-Once reliability so that duplicate elimination would eliminate
2877 PullRequest duplicates, (2) enforce the integrity of reliability headers by proper compliance with WSS.

2878 **7.12. Countermeasure Technologies**

2879 **7.12.1. Persistent Digital Signature**

2880 The only available technology that can be applied to the purpose of digitally signing an ebMS Message
2881 (the ebXML SOAP Header and Body and its associated payload objects) is provided by technology that
2882 conforms to the Web Services Security and Web Services Security SOAP Messages with Attachments
2883 Profile. An XML Signature conforming to these specifications can selectively sign portions of an XML
2884 document(s), permitting the documents to be augmented (new element content added) while preserving
2885 the validity of the signature(s).

2886 If signatures are being used to digitally sign an ebMS Message then Web Services Security and Web
2887 Services Security SOAP Messages with Attachments Profile MUST be used to bind the ebXML SOAP
2888 Header and Body to the ebXML Payload Container(s) or data elsewhere on the web that relate to the
2889 message.

2890 An ebMS Message requiring a digital signature SHALL be signed following the process defined in this
2891 section of the specification and SHALL be in full compliance with Web Services Security and Web
2892 Services Security SOAP Messages with Attachments Profile.

2893 **7.12.2. Persistent Signed Receipt**

2894 An ebMS Message that has been digitally signed MAY be acknowledged with a message containing an
2895 eb:Receipt Signal (described in Section 5.2.3.3), that itself is digitally signed in the manner described in
2896 the previous section. The Receipt Signal MUST contain the information necessary to provide
2897 nonrepudiation of receipt of the original message; that is, an XML Digital Signature Reference element list
2898 consistent with that contained in the Web Services Security Signature element of the original message.

2899 **7.12.3. Non-Persistent Authentication**

2900 Non-persistent authentication is provided by the communications channel used to transport the ebMS
2901 Message. This authentication MAY be either in one direction or bi-directional. The specific method will be
2902 determined by the communications protocol used. For instance, the use of a secure network protocol,
2903 such as TLS [RFC2246] or IPsec [RFC2402] provides the sender of an ebMS Message with a way to
2904 authenticate the destination for the TCP/IP environment.

2905 **7.12.4. Non-Persistent Integrity**

2906 A secure network protocol such as TLS or IPsec MAY be configured to provide for digests and
2907 comparisons of the packets transmitted via the network connection.

2908 **7.12.5. Persistent Confidentiality**

2909 Persistent confidentiality is provided by technology that conforms to Web Services Security and Web
2910 Services Security SOAP Messages with Attachments Profile. Encryption conforming to these
2911 specifications can provide persistent, selective confidentiality of elements within an ebMS Message
2912 including the SOAP Header.

2913 **7.12.6. Non-Persistent Confidentiality**

2914 A secure network protocol, such as TLS or IPSEC, provides transient confidentiality of a message as it is
2915 transferred between two ebXML adjacent MSH nodes.

2916 **7.12.7. Persistent Authorization**

2917 Persistent authorization MAY be provided using Web Services Security: SAML Token Profile.

2918 **7.12.8. Non-Persistent Authorization**

2919 A secure network protocol such as TLS or IPSEC MAY be configured to provide for bilateral authentication
2920 of certificates prior to establishing a session. This provides for the ability for an ebXML MSH to
2921 authenticate the source of a connection and to recognize the source as an authorized source of ebMS
2922 Messages.

2923 **7.13. Security Considerations**

2924 Implementers should take note, there is a vulnerability present even when an Web Services Security is
2925 used to protect to protect the integrity and origin of ebMS Messages. The significance of the vulnerability
2926 necessarily depends on the deployed environment and the transport used to exchange ebMS Messages.

2927 The vulnerability is present because ebXML messaging is an integration of both XML and MIME
2928 technologies. Whenever two or more technologies are conjoined there are always additional (sometimes
2929 unique) security issues to be addressed. In this case, MIME is used as the framework for the message
2930 package, containing the SOAP Envelope and any payload containers. Various elements of the SOAP
2931 Envelope make reference to the payloads, identified via MIME mechanisms. In addition, various labels are
2932 duplicated in both the SOAP Envelope and the MIME framework, for example, the type of the content in
2933 the payload. The issue is how and when all of this information is used.

2934 Specifically, the MIME Content-ID: header is used to specify a unique, identifying label for each payload.
2935 The label is used in the SOAP Envelope to identify the payload whenever it is needed. The MIME Content-
2936 Type: header is used to identify the type of content carried in the payload; some content types may contain
2937 additional parameters serving to further qualify the actual type. This information is available in the SOAP
2938 Envelope.

2939 The MIME headers are not protected, even when a Web Services Security based digital signature and/or
2940 Web Services Security based encryption is applied. Thus, an ebMS Message may be at risk depending on
2941 how the information in the MIME headers is processed as compared to the information in the SOAP
2942 Envelope.

2943 The Content-ID: MIME header is critical. An adversary could easily mount a denial-of-service attack by
2944 mixing and matching payloads with the Content-ID: headers. As with most denial-of-service attacks, no
2945 specific protection is offered for this vulnerability. However, it should be detected since the digest
2946 calculated for the actual payload will not match the digest included in the SOAP Envelope when the digital
2947 signature is validated.

2948 The presence of the content type in both the MIME headers and SOAP Envelope is a problem. Ordinary
2949 security practices discourage duplicating information in two places. When information is duplicated,
2950 ordinary security practices require the information in both places to be compared to ensure they are equal.
2951 It would be considered a security violation if both sets of information fail to match.

2952 An adversary could change the MIME headers while a message is en route from its origin to its destination
2953 and this would not be detected when the security services are validated. This threat is less significant in a
2954 peer-to-peer transport environment as compared to a multi-hop transport environment. All
2955 implementations are at risk if the ebMS Message is ever recorded in a long-term storage area since a
2956 compromise of that area puts the message at risk for modification.

2957 The actual risk depends on how an implementation uses each of the duplicate sets of information. If any
2958 processing beyond the MIME parsing for body part identification and separation is dependent on the
2959 information in the MIME headers, then the implementation is at risk of being directed to take unintended or
2960 undesirable actions. How this might be exploited is best compared to the common programming mistake
2961 of permitting buffer overflows: it depends on the creativity and persistence of the adversary.

2962 Thus, an implementation could reduce the risk by ensuring that the unprotected information in the MIME
2963 headers is never used except by the MIME parser for the minimum purpose of identifying and separating
2964 the body parts. This version of the specification makes no recommendation regarding whether or not an
2965 implementation should compare the duplicate sets of information nor what action to take based on the
2966 results of the comparison.

2967

8. Reliable Messaging Module

2968

8.1. The Reliable Messaging Model

2969

The reliable delivery of messages has two aspects:

2970

1. a contractual aspect regarding delivery conditions and error notification, where the contracting parties are the MSHs and the entities using the MSH - the message Producer and Consumer.

2971

2972

2. a protocol aspect, that describes the reliability mechanism "on the wire".

2973

This section emphasizes the contractual aspect. The details of the protocol aspect depend on the specifics of the reliability module and its binding, described in Appendix B.

2974

2975

8.1.1. Message Processing

2976

A basic design principle in ebMS 3.0 is to modularize major messaging QoS features, meaning no interference – except of black-box style - with other aspects of message processing, so that (a) the MSH can rely on existing standards in the area of concern, but also (b) so that implementations of such standards can be reused with no or little modification.

2977

2978

2979

2980

The reliability function is processed separately from the ebMS header. This processing will be abstractly defined as performed by a module possibly acting as a separate SOAP node, called a **Reliable Messaging Processor (RMP)**. The reliability of ebMS Messages is supported by SOAP header extensions – called here "reliability header(s)" – that are distinct from ebMS headers.

2981

2982

2983

2984

The following serialization is REQUIRED, between reliability headers and ebMS-qualified headers:

2985

On Sending side:

2986

1. processing of ebMS headers (the ebMS-qualified headers are added to the message).

2987

2. processing of reliability headers (the headers are added to the message).

2988

On Receiving side:

2989

1. processing of reliability headers (the headers are removed from the message).

2990

2. processing of ebMS headers (the ebMS-qualified headers are removed from the message).

2991

Note

2992

Other steps in the processing of ebXML headers, such as Security headers, are not mentioned here. The above message processing flows do not exclude the insertion of such additional steps, which are depicted in Figure 7 and described in Section 4.1.

2993

2994

2995

8.1.2. The Reliable Messaging Processor in the MSH

2996

As illustrated in Figure 10 and Figure 11, the reliability model requires two instances of RMP playing different roles when executing a reliable MEP: the Initiator RMP (associated with the Initiator MSH) and the Responder RMP (associated with the Responder MSH). It must be noted that these roles do not change over the execution of a simple ebMS MEP instance, as opposed to the roles of Sending and Receiving, which may vary for each user message exchanged. This means, for example, that the Initiator will assume the necessary functions to send a request message reliably, and also receive its response, if any (successively taking on a Sending and then Receiving role, as defined in the Messaging Model, Section 2.1.1).

2997

2998

2999

3000

3001

3002

3003

3004

Five abstract operations, RM-Submit, RM-Deliver, RM-SubmitResponse, RM-DeliverResponse, RM-Notify, represent the abstract interface of the RMP. They transfer either message data or notification data between an RMP and another component of the MSH. This other component is normally the module that is processing the ebMS header and its packaging, as described in the Processing Model (Section 4.1). On the sender side, this module is abstracted as the RM-Producer. On the receiver side, it is abstracted as the RM-Consumer. In this section, the expression "sent reliably" means that the sending is subject to a reliability contract (see Section 8.2.1).

3005

3006

3007

3008

3009

3010

3011

The abstract RM operations are defined as follows:

- 3012 • **RM-Submit**
- 3013 An abstract operation that transfers a SOAP message from an RM-Producer to an Initiator RMP,
- 3014 so that this message can be sent reliably.
- 3015 • **RM-Deliver**
- 3016 An abstract operation that transfers a SOAP message from a Responder RMP to its RM-
- 3017 Consumer, so that the payload from this message can later be delivered by the MSH.
- 3018 • **RM-SubmitResponse**
- 3019 An abstract operation that transfers a SOAP message from an RM-Producer to a Responder
- 3020 RMP as a response to a message received reliably. This response is sent back reliably.
- 3021 • **RM-DeliverResponse**
- 3022 An abstract operation that transfers a received SOAP response message from an Initiator RMP to
- 3023 its RM-Consumer.
- 3024 • **RM-Notify**
- 3025 An abstract operation that makes available to the RM-Producer or to the RM-Consumer a failure
- 3026 status of a message sent reliably (e.g. a notification telling that the message was not delivered).
- 3027

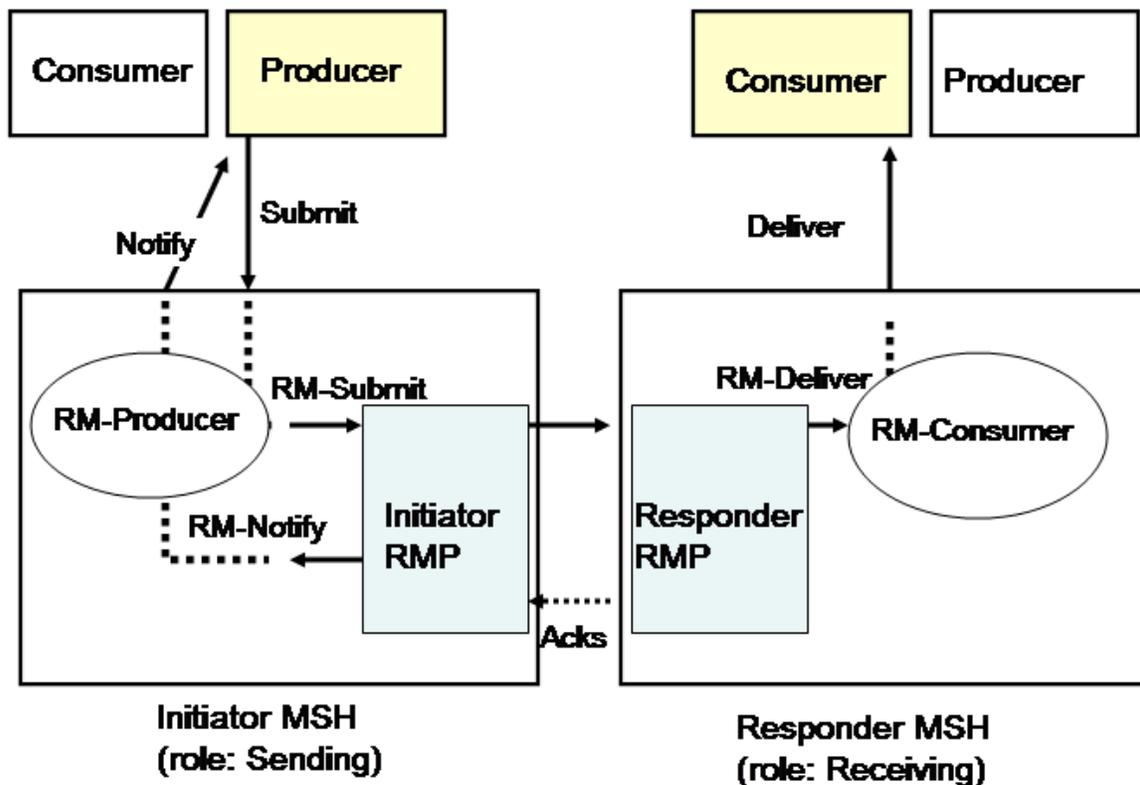


Figure 10: Sending an ebMS Message Reliably

3029 Figure 10 shows the operations involved when sending a request reliably. As indicated in Section 8.3, this
 3030 sequence of operations applies either to the User Message in the One-Way/Push MEP, the PullRequest
 3031 Signal of a One-Way/Pull MEP, or the first leg of a Two-Way/Sync MEP.
 3032

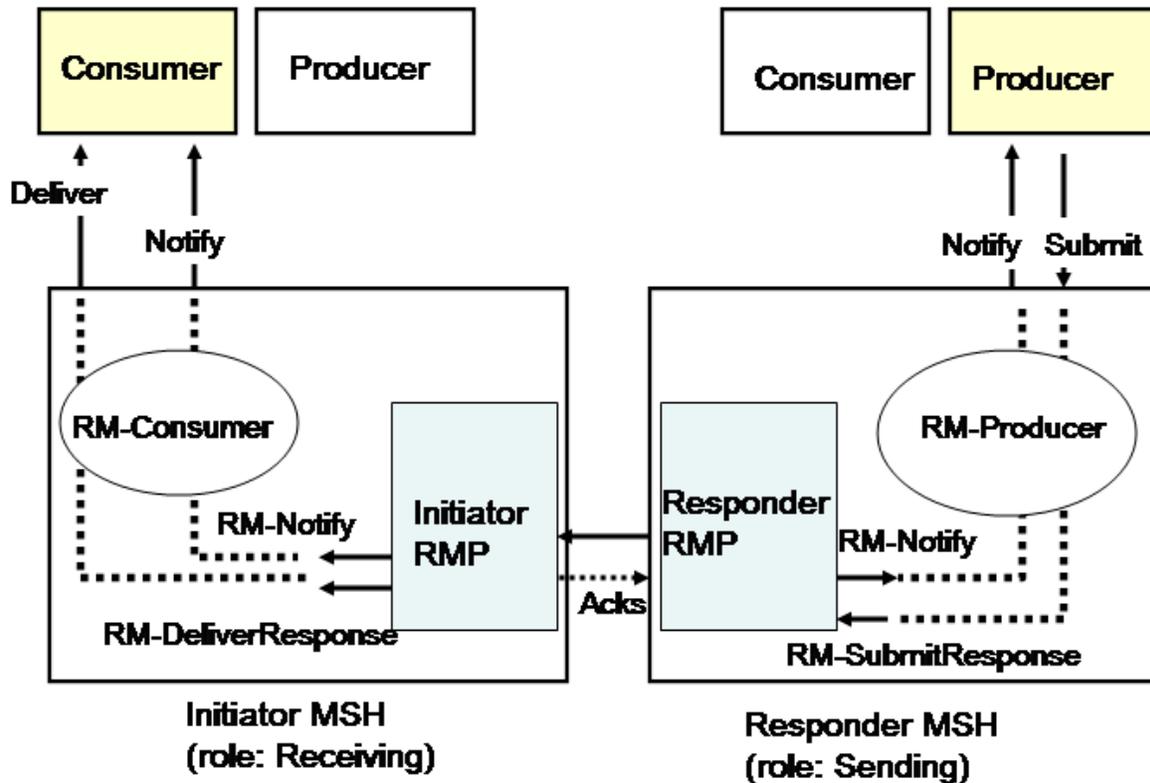


Figure 11: Sending an ebMS MEP Response Message Reliably

3034 Figure 11 shows the abstract operations and components involved when sending a response reliably. As
 3035 indicated in Section 8.3, this sequence of operations applies either to a pulled user message in the One-
 3036 Way/Pull MEP or the response user message in a Two-Way/Sync MEP. Note that depending on the
 3037 reliability processing mode (P-Mode.Reliability), awareness of delivery failure may occur on either side.

3038 8.2. Reliable Delivery of ebMS Messages

3039 Because the reliability function is supported by a module (RMP) within the MSH, the contractual aspect
 3040 has to be considered at two levels: (a) between the RMP and the MSH internals, and (b) between the
 3041 MSH and its Consumer/Producer entities (e.g. an application).

3042 8.2.1. Reliability Contracts for the RMP

3043 Depending on the reliability required for a request message, an RMP must support some or all of the
 3044 following contracts:

- 3045 • **At-Least-Once RM-Delivery**
 3046 When sending a message with this reliability requirement (RM-Submit invocation), one of the two
 3047 following outcomes shall occur: either (1) the Responder RMP successfully delivers (RM-Deliver
 3048 operation) the message to the RM-Consumer or (2) either the Initiator RMP or the Responder
 3049 RMP notifies (RM-Notify operation) respectively the RM Producer or the RM Consumer of a
 3050 delivery failure.
- 3051 • **At-Most-Once RM-Delivery**
 3052 Under this reliability requirement, a message submitted by an RM Producer (RM-Submit

3053 operation) to an Initiator RMP shall not be delivered more than once by the Responder RMP to its
3054 RM-Consumer. The notion of message duplicate is based on a notion of message ID that must be
3055 supported by the reliability specification being used.

3056 • **In-Order RM-Delivery**

3057 Under this reliability requirement, a sequence of messages submitted to an Initiator RMP
3058 (sequence of RM-Submit invocations) shall be delivered in the same order by the Responder
3059 RMP to its RM-Consumer.

3060 These contracts MAY also apply to response messages, as illustrated in Figure 11. In such a case they
3061 are expressed in the above contracts with RM-SubmitResponse and RM-DeliverResponse operations
3062 (instead of RM-Submit and RM-Deliver, respectively), and the Responder and Initiator RMPs switch roles.

3063 These contracts may be combined; e.g. Exactly-Once results from the combination of At-Least-Once and
3064 At-Most-Once.

3065 In order to support these reliability contracts, both Initiator and Responder RMPs MUST use a reliability
3066 protocol independent from the transport protocol and that provides end-to-end acknowledgment and
3067 message resending capabilities. The details and parameters associated with these protocol functions are
3068 described in Appendix B.

3069 8.2.2. Reliability Contracts for the MSH

3070 Because reliability quality of service (QoS) must have significance for the user of the MSH (Producer,
3071 Consumer), and not just for the internal components of the MSH (called RM-Producer and RM-Consumer)
3072 that interact with the RMP component, it is necessary to extend the above contracts and express them in
3073 terms of abstract MSH operations:

3074 • **At-Least-Once ebMS Delivery**

3075 When sending a message with this reliability requirement (Submit invocation), one of the two
3076 following outcomes shall occur: either (1) the Responder MSH successfully delivers (Deliver
3077 operation) the message to the Consumer or (2) a delivery failure notification is communicated
3078 (Notify operation) to either the Producer or the Consumer.

3079 • **At-Most-Once ebMS Delivery:**

3080 Under this reliability requirement, a message transmitted as the result of a Submit invocation on
3081 the Initiator MSH shall not be delivered more than once by the Responder MSH to its Consumer.
3082 An ebMS message is a duplicate of another if it has same eb:MessageId value.

3083 • **In-Order ebMS Delivery**

3084 Under this reliability requirement, a sequence of messages submitted to the Initiator MSH by its
3085 Producer shall be delivered by the Responder MSH in the same order to its Consumer.

3086 In order to fulfill the above QoS requirements, an MSH MUST do the following, in addition to interfacing
3087 with the reliability functions provided by the RMP:

- 3088 • Ensure a proper mapping between MSH abstract operations and RMP abstract operations. This
3089 mapping, which depends on the ebMS MEP being used, is described in Section 8.3.
- 3090 • Ensure the handling of additional failure cases that may happen outside the RMP processing and
3091 outside the transport layer. For example, in the case of At-Least-Once delivery, the sending MSH
3092 must ensure that if a message that has been submitted (Submit) fails before RM-Submit is
3093 invoked, then a delivery failure Error is generated, as would be the case if the message
3094 processing failed just after RM-Submit was invoked. Similarly, if a message fails to be delivered
3095 on receiver side (Deliver) even after RM-Deliver has been successfully invoked, then a delivery
3096 failure Error must be generated and reported either to the Producer or the Consumer, depending
3097 on the P-Mode.ErrorHandling.
- 3098 • Have sufficient control on which RM sequence is used when submitting a message (RM-Submit),
3099 so that an RM sequence may be mapped to an ebMS conversation (eb:ConversationId).

3100 Similar contracts apply to response messages (e.g. second leg of an ebMS Two-Way/Sync MEP), by
3101 switching Initiator MSH and Responder MSH in the above definitions.

3102 8.2.3. Reliability for Signal Messages

3103 Messages that have eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:Service set to "http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-
3104 msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/service" are not intended to be delivered (Deliver) to an MSH Consumer,
3105 although they may be submitted by an MSH Producer. They are intended for internal MSH consumption.
3106 They may also be subject to reliability contracts. In this case, the at-least-once contract is fulfilled with a
3107 successful RM-delivery. In case of at-least-once delivery, a failure to deliver MUST cause the generation
3108 of a delivery failure Error. If this message was submitted or initiated by an MSH Producer (Submit) instead
3109 of the MSH itself, the Producer MAY be notified (Notify) of the failure depending on the reporting mode, as
3110 for regular user messages.

3111 8.2.4. Handling of Delivery Failures

3112 Delivery is an abstract operation that may be implemented in various ways. It is the responsibility of an
3113 implementation or product to clearly state at what point in its processing it considers that a message is
3114 delivered. Such a statement amounts to defining a concrete "binding" to the Deliver operation, that a user
3115 can rely on for interpreting the reliability contracts defined and required in this specification, relative to this
3116 implementation.

3117 There are two options when supporting the At-Least-Once delivery contract:

- 3118 1. Delivery failures are always notified to the Producer (the sending side).
- 3119 2. Delivery failures are always notified, though either to the Producer or to the Consumer (the
3120 receiving side), depending on the nature of the failure.

3121 It is part of an agreement between parties to decide which notification option (1 or 2) must be enforced. An
3122 MSH implementation may also be limited in its ability to support option 1. Conformance profiles for this
3123 specification may require either option to be supported.

3124 Delivery Failures (DFs) may be caused by network failure, or by processing failure on either side. In the
3125 remaining part of this section, the following is assumed:

- 3126 • An MSH is always aware of processing failures that occur locally or that have been communicated
3127 to it, and it is always able to report these to its local party (Producer or Consumer) in some way.
3128 E.g. a message processing failure in a Receiving RMP can always be notified to the Consumer.
- 3129 • A DF that needs to be communicated from MSH to MSH should not itself rely on the transfer of an
3130 Error message (or a Fault), as such message may precisely also fail to be transferred. It is safer
3131 that it relies on the "non-transfer" of a message, such as a missing Acknowledgment.

3132 **Note:**

3133 By relying on the non-reception of an Acknowledgment for notifying DF, "false" DFs may
3134 occur (in case of Acknowledgment loss), but the case where a message fails to be
3135 delivered unknowingly from the Producer (false delivery) cannot occur. False DF - which
3136 can never be completely eliminated - can always be detected outside the reliable
3137 messaging (RM) layer, in a tractable and less urgent way - e.g. the sending party may
3138 synchronize on a daily basis by communicating its list of assumed delivery failures, for
3139 confirmation by receiver. The Status Request feature (which may be described in a
3140 forthcoming Part 2 of the ebMS specification) could facilitate this function.

3141 Restrictions in the ability to support notification option 1 usually depend on the semantics of
3142 Acknowledgment that is supported by the RMP. Three cases are to be considered:

3143 **Case 1:** The acknowledgment is "on receipt" (as in WS-ReliableMessaging) and has no delivery
3144 semantics. In that case:

- 3145 • DF notifications to the Producer rely on lack of acknowledgments for network failures (non-
3146 reception of a User message)
- 3147 • DF notifications to the Producer rely on Error messages (or Faults) for any other failure occurring
3148 after reception, on Consumer side.

3149 For reasons mentioned above, this acknowledgment semantics does not generally support option 1.
3150 However, in the case of the HTTP binding with no intermediaries present, non-delivery due to processing
3151 failure can still be indicated in a reliable way to the sending side (and will trump the acknowledgment), as
3152 either a SOAP Fault is received on the HTTP response or the HTTP response fails.

3153 The requirements for this transport-specific solution to option 1 which is reliable only for non-delivered
3154 pushed messages (as opposed to pulled) are detailed in Appendix B.

3155 **Case 2:** The acknowledgment is "on MSH-delivery" (supported in WS-Reliability). In that case, notification
3156 option 1 can be supported as well as option 2. In order for option 1 to be supported, an RMP must
3157 implement RM-Deliver operation so that it is only considered successful (worthy of sending an
3158 acknowledgment) if the Deliver operation from MSH to Consumer also succeeds. It is RECOMMENDED
3159 that an implementation support this acknowledgment semantics.

3160 **Case 3:** The acknowledgment is "on RM-delivery" (supported in WS-Reliability). In case the condition in
3161 Case 2 is not supported by an RMP implementation, RM-Delivery is only concerning the RMP module and
3162 does not coincide with MSH delivery. Acknowledgments are "on RM-delivery" only.

3163 Support for option 1 may be accomplished by relying on the transport-specific solution mentioned in Case
3164 1. This solution is easier to implement here, as it only concerns the module processing the ebMS header
3165 (not the RMP implementation), as described in Appendix B.

3166 **8.3. Reliability of ebMS MEPs**

3167 This section describes the reliability model for MEPs. For a concrete enumeration of all reliability options
3168 for MEPs in the context of an HTTP binding, see Appendix E, which also shows how these combinations
3169 can be controlled with P-Mode parameters.

3170 **8.3.1. Reliability of the One-Way/Push MEP**

3171 The sequence of abstract operation invocations for a successful reliable instance of this MEP is as
3172 follows:

3173 **On Initiator MSH side:**

- 3174 • Step (1): **Submit**: submission of message data to the MSH by the Producer party.
- 3175 • Step (2): **RM-Submit**: after processing of ebXML headers, submission to the RMP.

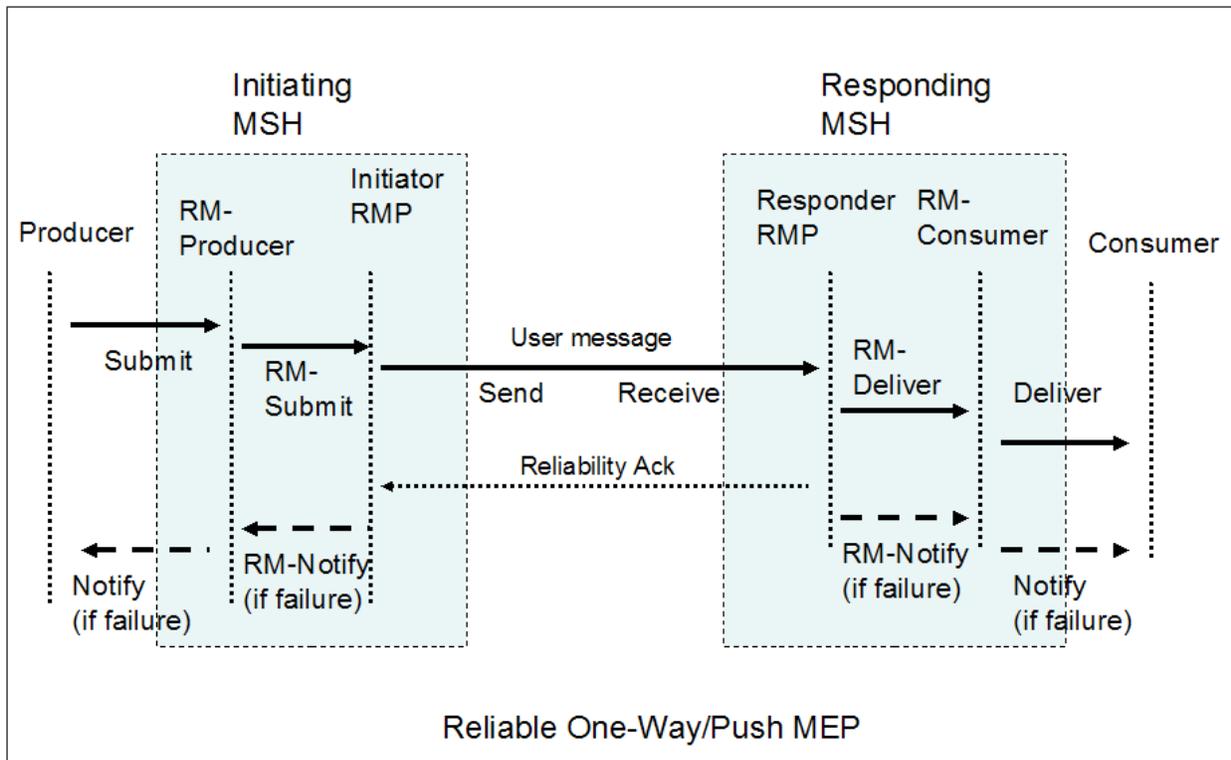
3176 **On Responder MSH side:**

- 3177 • Step (3): **RM-Deliver**: after processing of reliability headers, delivery to other MSH functions.
- 3178 • Step (4): **Deliver**: after processing of ebXML headers, delivery of message data to the Consumer
3179 of the MSH.

3180 **Note:**

3181 In case of delivery failure, either step (4) (Deliver) fails and Notify is invoked on
3182 Responder side, or both (3) and (4) fail and RM-Notify (then Notify) is invoked on either
3183 one of each side. A step "fails" either when it is not invoked in this sequence, or when it is
3184 invoked but does not complete successfully.

3185 Figure 12 illustrates the message flow for this reliable MEP.



3186 *Figure 12: Reliable One-Way/Push MEP*

3187 The way in which the Reliability Acknowledgment binds to the underlying protocol - e.g. as a separate
 3188 HTTP request, or on the back-channel of a previous message - is controlled by the P-Mode parameter
 3189 Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern.

3190 **8.3.2. Reliability of the One-Way/Pull MEP**

3191 The processing model is as follows, for a typical and successful reliable instance of this MEP:

3192 **On Responder MSH side:**

- 3193 • Step (1): **Submit**: submission of message data to the MSH by the Producer party, intended for the
 3194 Consumer on the Initiator side.

3195 **On Initiator MSH side:**

- 3196 • Step (2): Generation of a PullRequest signal by the MSH. **RM-Submit** is invoked on the Initiator
 3197 RMP for this signal.

3198 **On Responder MSH side:**

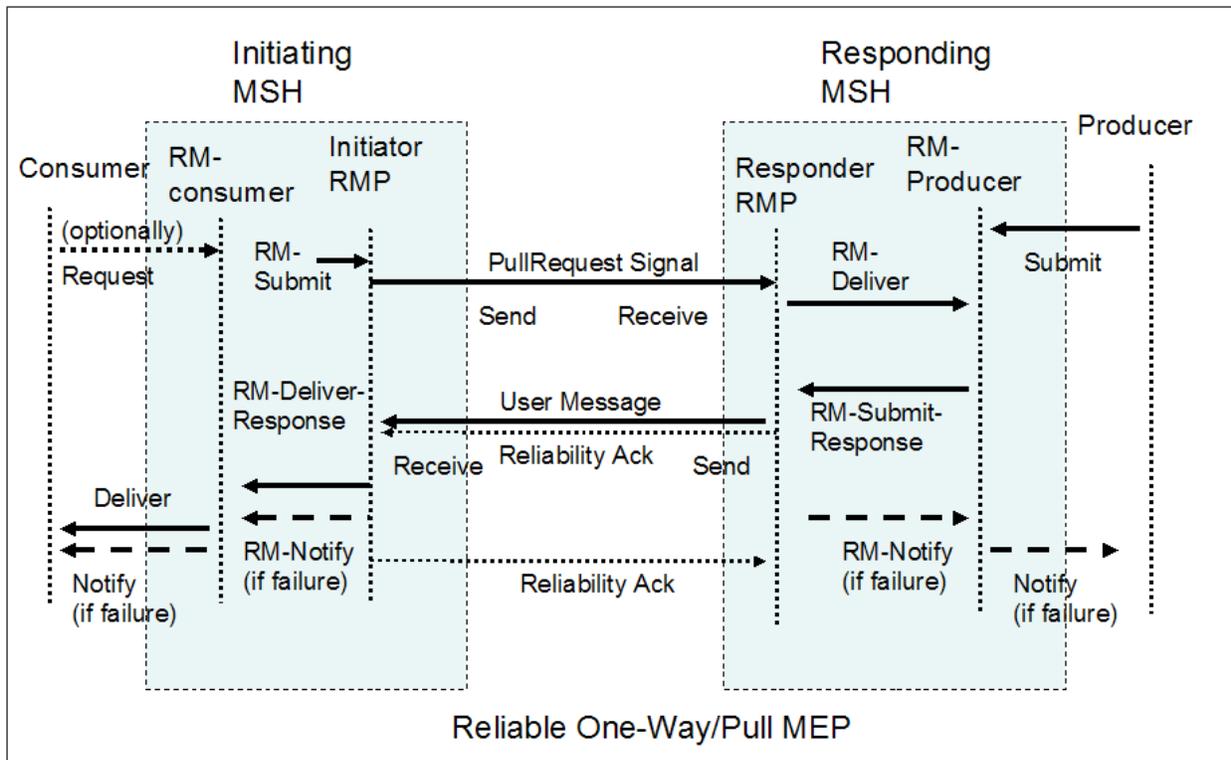
- 3199 • Step (3): Reception of the PullRequest signal by MSH functions. **RM-Deliver** is invoked on the
 3200 Responder RMP for this signal.
- 3201 • Step (4): Submission of the pulled message to the RMP. This results in an **RM-SubmitResponse**
 3202 invocation.

3203 **On Initiator MSH side:**

- 3204 • Step (5): **RM-DeliverResponse**: after processing of reliability headers of the pulled message,
 3205 delivery to the RM-Consumer.
- 3206 • Step (6): **Deliver**: after processing of ebMS headers, delivery of the pulled message data to the
 3207 Consumer of the MSH.

3208 Figure 13 illustrates the message flow for this reliable MEP.

3209



3210 *Figure 13: Reliable One-Way/Pull MEP*

3211 The way in which the Reliability Acknowledgments are bound to the underlying protocol is controlled by
 3212 the P-Mode parameter Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern.

3213 In this MEP, as well as in the Simple Request-reply MEP below, the same reliability contracts that apply to
 3214 the MEP request (here the PullRequest signal) MAY apply to the MEP response handled by RM-
 3215 SubmitResponse and RM-DeliverResponse operations.

3216 In such cases, when an MEP response is under reliability contract, the following requirements apply:

- 3217 • When the MEP response is under At-Least-Once reliability contract, then the MEP request MUST
- 3218 also be under At-Least-Once reliability contract. In addition, if the MEP request is also under At-
- 3219 At-Most-Once reliability contract, and if it has been delivered and responded to by the Responder
- 3220 RMP, then if a duplicate of the MEP request is received later, a duplicate of the same response
- 3221 that has been returned for the initial request MUST be returned for the duplicate request. Note:
- 3222 depending on where a response delivery failure needs be notified (either on Initiator or
- 3223 Responding side, based on P-Mode.Reliability content), an acknowledgment may or may not need
- 3224 be returned for the response message by the Initiator RMP.
- 3225 • When the MEP response is under At-Most-Once delivery, then the MEP request MUST also be
- 3226 under At-Most-Once delivery.

3227 **8.3.3. Reliability of the Two-Way/Sync MEP**

3228 The processing model is as follows, for a typical and successful instance of this MEP:

3229 **On Initiator MSH side:**

- 3230 • Step (1): **Submit**: submission of the request message data to the MSH by the Producer party.
- 3231 • Step (2): **RM-Submit**: submission of the request message to the Initiator RMP.

3232 **On Responder MSH side:**

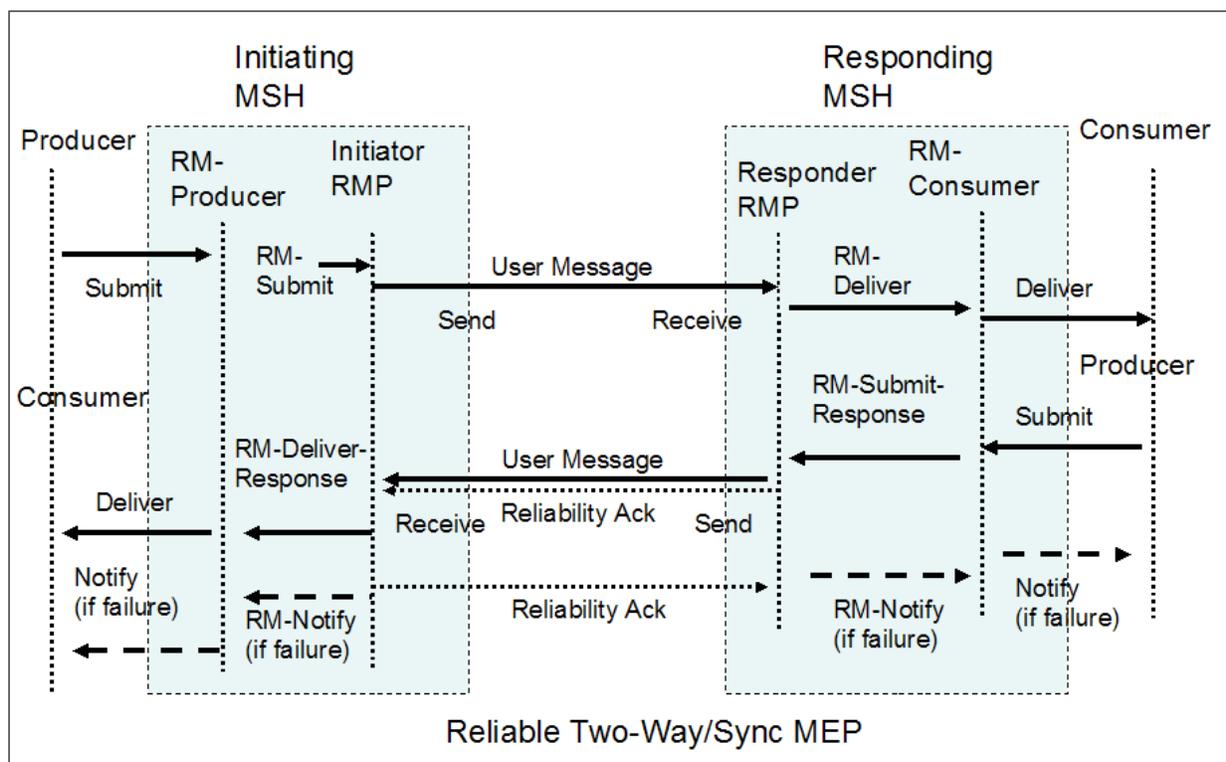
- 3233 • Step (3): **RM-Deliver**: after processing of reliability headers, delivery of the request message to
- 3234 RM-Consumer.
- 3235 • Step (4): **Deliver**: delivery of the request message data to the Consumer of the MSH.

- 3236 • Step (5): **Submit**: submission of a response message data to the MSH by the Consumer of the
3237 request message, intended for the Producer on the Initiator side.
- 3238 • Step (6): **RM-SubmitResponse**: submission by the RM-Producer of the response message to the
3239 Responder RMP.

3240 **On Initiator MSH side:**

- 3241 • Step (7): **RM-DeliverResponse**: delivery of the response message to the RM-Consumer.
- 3242 • Step (8): **Deliver**: delivery of the response message data to the Consumer of the Initiator MSH.

3243 Figure 14 illustrates the message flow for this reliable MEP.



3244 *Figure 14: Reliable Two-Way/Sync MEP*

3245
3246 The way in which the Reliability Acknowledgments are bound to the underlying protocol is controlled by
3247 the P-Mode parameter `Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern`.

3248 When the MEP response is under reliability contract, the same dependencies with the reliability of the
3249 MEP request that are described for the One-Way/Pull MEP, also apply here.

3250 8.3.4. Reliability of Other Transport-Channel-Bound MEPs

3251 Each one of the MEPs defined in Section 2.2.8: Two-Way/Push-and-Push, Two-Way/Push-and-Pull, and
3252 Two-Way/Pull-and-Push, has been characterized as having a message choreography equivalent to a
3253 sequence of two of the previous MEPs (e.g. Two-Way/Push-and-Pull has a choreography equivalent to
3254 One-Way/Push + One-Way/Pull). The reliability of these more complex MEPs may be handled by
3255 composing reliable versions of these simpler exchanges, which are described in Sections 8.3.1, 8.3.2 and
3256 8.3.3. It can be noted that the reliable Two-Way/Push-and-Push MEP will not make use of the RM-
3257 SubmitResponse operation.

3258

APPENDIX A. The ebXML SOAP Extension Element Schema

3259

3260 Following is the XML schema that describes the eb:Messaging header, as described in Section 5.2. This
 3261 copy is provided for convenience only, and is non-normative. The normative version of the schema may
 3262 be found in a separate file, at http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/core/ebms-header-3_0-200704.xsd.
 3263

```

3264 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3265 <xsd:schema xmlns="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/"
3266 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
3267 xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
3268 xmlns:S12="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
3269 xmlns:tns="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/"
3270 targetNamespace="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/"
3271 elementFormDefault="qualified"
3272 attributeFormDefault="unqualified">
3273   <xsd:annotation>
3274     <xsd:appinfo>Schema for ebMS-3 XML Infoset</xsd:appinfo>
3275     <xsd:documentation xml:lang="en">
3276       This schema defines the XML Infoset of ebMS-3 headers. These headers are
3277       placed within the SOAP Header element of either a SOAP 1.1 or SOAP 1.2
3278       message.
3279     </xsd:documentation>
3280   </xsd:annotation>
3281   <xsd:import namespace="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
3282     schemaLocation="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/" />
3283   <xsd:import namespace="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
3284     schemaLocation="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope/" />
3285   <xsd:import namespace="http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace"
3286     schemaLocation="http://www.w3.org/2001/03/xml.xsd" />
3287   <xsd:element name="Messaging" type="Messaging" />
3288   <xsd:complexType name="Messaging">
3289     <xsd:annotation>
3290       <xsd:documentation xml:lang="en">
3291         The eb:Messaging element is the top element of ebMS-3 headers, and it is
3292         placed within the SOAP Header element (either SOAP 1.1 or SOAP 1.2). The
3293         eb:Messaging element may contain several instances of eb:SignalMessage
3294         and eb:UserMessage elements. However in the core part of the ebMS-3
3295         specification, only one instance of either eb:UserMessage or eb:SignalMessage
3296         must be present. The second part of ebMS-3 specification may need to include
3297         multiple instances of either eb:SignalMessage, eb:UserMessage or both.
3298         Therefore, this schema is allowing multiple instances of eb:SignalMessage
3299         and eb:UserMessage elements for part 2 of the ebMS-3 specification. Note
3300         that the eb:Messaging element cannot be empty (at least one of
3301         eb:SignalMessage or eb:UserMessage element must present).
3302       </xsd:documentation>
3303     </xsd:annotation>
3304     <xsd:sequence>
3305       <xsd:element name="SignalMessage" type="SignalMessage" minOccurs="0"
3306         maxOccurs="unbounded" />
3307       <xsd:element name="UserMessage" type="UserMessage" minOccurs="0"
3308         maxOccurs="unbounded" />
3309       <xsd:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0"
3310         maxOccurs="unbounded" />
3311     </xsd:sequence>
3312     <xsd:attributeGroup ref="tns:headerExtension" />
3313   </xsd:complexType>
3314   <xsd:complexType name="SignalMessage">
3315     <xsd:annotation>
3316       <xsd:documentation xml:lang="en">
3317         In the core part of ebMS-3 specification, an eb:Signal Message is allowed to
3318         contain eb:MessageInfo and at most one Receipt Signal, at most one
3319         eb:PullRequest
3320         element, and/or a series of eb:Error elements. In part 2 of the ebMS-3
3321         specification, new signals may be introduced, and for this reason,
3322         an extensibility point is added here to the eb:SignalMessage element to
3323         allow it to contain any elements.
3324       </xsd:documentation>
3325     </xsd:annotation>
3326     <xsd:sequence>
3327       <xsd:element name="MessageInfo" type="MessageInfo" />

```

```

3328     <xsd:element name="PullRequest" type="PullRequest" minOccurs="0"/>
3329     <xsd:element name="Receipt" type="Receipt" minOccurs="0"/>
3330     <xsd:element name="Error" type="Error" minOccurs="0"
3331 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3332     <xsd:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0"
3333 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3334   </xsd:sequence>
3335 </xsd:complexType>
3336 <xsd:complexType name="Error">
3337   <xsd:sequence>
3338     <xsd:element name="Description" type="tns:Description" minOccurs="0"/>
3339     <xsd:element name="ErrorDetail" type="xsd:token" minOccurs="0"/>
3340   </xsd:sequence>
3341   <xsd:attribute name="category" type="xsd:token" use="optional"/>
3342   <xsd:attribute name="refToMessageInError" type="xsd:token" use="optional"/>
3343   <xsd:attribute name="errorCode" type="xsd:token" use="required"/>
3344   <xsd:attribute name="origin" type="xsd:token" use="optional"/>
3345   <xsd:attribute name="severity" type="xsd:token" use="required"/>
3346   <xsd:attribute name="shortDescription" type="xsd:token" use="optional"/>
3347 </xsd:complexType>
3348 <xsd:complexType name="PullRequest">
3349   <xsd:sequence>
3350     <xsd:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax" minOccurs="0"
3351 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3352   </xsd:sequence>
3353   <xsd:attributeGroup ref="pullAttributes"/>
3354 </xsd:complexType>
3355 <xsd:complexType name="Receipt">
3356   <xsd:sequence>
3357     <xsd:any namespace="##other" processContents="lax"
3358 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3359   </xsd:sequence>
3360 </xsd:complexType>
3361 <xsd:complexType name="UserMessage">
3362   <xsd:sequence>
3363     <xsd:element name="MessageInfo" type="MessageInfo"/>
3364     <xsd:element name="PartyInfo" type="PartyInfo"/>
3365     <xsd:element name="CollaborationInfo" type="CollaborationInfo"/>
3366     <xsd:element name="MessageProperties" type="tns:MessageProperties"
3367 minOccurs="0"/>
3368     <xsd:element name="PayloadInfo" type="tns:PayloadInfo" minOccurs="0"/>
3369   </xsd:sequence>
3370   <xsd:attribute name="mpc" type="xsd:anyURI" use="optional"/>
3371 </xsd:complexType>
3372 <xsd:complexType name="MessageInfo">
3373   <xsd:sequence>
3374     <xsd:element name="Timestamp" type="xsd:dateTime"/>
3375     <xsd:element name="MessageId" type="tns:non-empty-string"/>
3376     <xsd:element name="RefToMessageId" type="tns:non-empty-string"
3377 minOccurs="0"/>
3378   </xsd:sequence>
3379 </xsd:complexType>
3380 <xsd:complexType name="PartyInfo">
3381   <xsd:sequence>
3382     <xsd:element name="From" type="tns:From"/>
3383     <xsd:element name="To" type="tns:To"/>
3384   </xsd:sequence>
3385 </xsd:complexType>
3386 <xsd:complexType name="PartyId">
3387   <xsd:simpleContent>
3388     <xsd:extension base="tns:non-empty-string">
3389       <xsd:attribute name="type" type="tns:non-empty-string"/>
3390     </xsd:extension>
3391   </xsd:simpleContent>
3392 </xsd:complexType>
3393 <xsd:complexType name="From">
3394   <xsd:sequence>
3395     <xsd:element name="PartyId" type="tns:PartyId" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3396     <xsd:element name="Role" type="tns:non-empty-string"/>
3397   </xsd:sequence>
3398 </xsd:complexType>
3399 <xsd:complexType name="To">
3400   <xsd:sequence>
3401     <xsd:element name="PartyId" type="tns:PartyId" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3402     <xsd:element name="Role" type="tns:non-empty-string"/>
3403   </xsd:sequence>

```

```

3404 </xsd:complexType>
3405 <xsd:complexType name="CollaborationInfo">
3406   <xsd:sequence>
3407     <xsd:element name="AgreementRef" type="tns:AgreementRef" minOccurs="0"/>
3408     <xsd:element name="Service" type="tns:Service"/>
3409     <xsd:element name="Action" type="xsd:token"/>
3410     <xsd:element name="ConversationId" type="xsd:token"/>
3411   </xsd:sequence>
3412 </xsd:complexType>
3413 <xsd:complexType name="Service">
3414   <xsd:simpleContent>
3415     <xsd:extension base="tns:non-empty-string">
3416       <xsd:attribute name="type" type="tns:non-empty-string"
3417 use="optional"/>
3418     </xsd:extension>
3419   </xsd:simpleContent>
3420 </xsd:complexType>
3421 <xsd:complexType name="AgreementRef">
3422   <xsd:simpleContent>
3423     <xsd:extension base="tns:non-empty-string">
3424       <xsd:attribute name="type" type="tns:non-empty-string"
3425 use="optional"/>
3426       <xsd:attribute name="pmode" type="tns:non-empty-string"
3427 use="optional"/>
3428     </xsd:extension>
3429   </xsd:simpleContent>
3430 </xsd:complexType>
3431 <xsd:complexType name="PayloadInfo">
3432   <xsd:sequence>
3433     <xsd:element name="PartInfo" type="tns:PartInfo" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3434   </xsd:sequence>
3435 </xsd:complexType>
3436 <xsd:complexType name="PartInfo">
3437   <xsd:sequence>
3438     <xsd:element name="Schema" type="tns:Schema" minOccurs="0"/>
3439     <xsd:element name="Description" type="tns:Description" minOccurs="0"/>
3440     <xsd:element name="PartProperties" type="tns:PartProperties"
3441 minOccurs="0"/>
3442   </xsd:sequence>
3443   <xsd:attribute name="href" type="xsd:token"/>
3444 </xsd:complexType>
3445 <xsd:complexType name="Schema">
3446   <xsd:attribute name="location" type="xsd:anyURI" use="required"/>
3447   <xsd:attribute name="version" type="tns:non-empty-string" use="optional"/>
3448   <xsd:attribute name="namespace" type="tns:non-empty-string" use="optional"/>
3449 </xsd:complexType>
3450 <xsd:complexType name="Property">
3451   <xsd:simpleContent>
3452     <xsd:extension base="tns:non-empty-string">
3453       <xsd:attribute name="name" type="tns:non-empty-string"
3454 use="required"/>
3455     </xsd:extension>
3456   </xsd:simpleContent>
3457 </xsd:complexType>
3458 <xsd:complexType name="PartProperties">
3459   <xsd:sequence>
3460     <xsd:element name="Property" type="tns:Property" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3461   </xsd:sequence>
3462 </xsd:complexType>
3463 <xsd:complexType name="MessageProperties">
3464   <xsd:sequence>
3465     <xsd:element name="Property" type="Property" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3466   </xsd:sequence>
3467 </xsd:complexType>
3468 <xsd:attributeGroup name="headerExtension">
3469   <xsd:attribute name="id" type="xsd:ID" use="optional"/>
3470   <xsd:attribute ref="S11:mustUnderstand" use="optional">
3471     <xsd:annotation>
3472       <xsd:documentation>
3473         if SOAP 1.1 is being used, this attribute is required
3474       </xsd:documentation>
3475     </xsd:annotation>
3476   </xsd:attribute>
3477   <xsd:attribute ref="S12:mustUnderstand" use="optional">
3478     <xsd:annotation>
3479       <xsd:documentation>

```

```
3480         if SOAP 1.2 is being used, this attribute is required
3481         </xsd:documentation>
3482     </xsd:annotation>
3483 </xsd:attribute>
3484     <xsd:anyAttribute namespace="##other" processContents="lax"/>
3485 </xsd:attributeGroup>
3486 <xsd:attributeGroup name="pullAttributes">
3487     <xsd:attribute name="mpc" type="xsd:anyURI" use="optional"/>
3488     <xsd:anyAttribute namespace="##other" processContents="lax"/>
3489 </xsd:attributeGroup>
3490 <xsd:complexType name="Description">
3491     <xsd:simpleContent>
3492         <xsd:extension base="tns:non-empty-string">
3493             <xsd:attribute ref="xml:lang" use="required"/>
3494         </xsd:extension>
3495     </xsd:simpleContent>
3496 </xsd:complexType>
3497 <xsd:simpleType name="non-empty-string">
3498     <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
3499         <xsd:minLength value="1"/>
3500     </xsd:restriction>
3501 </xsd:simpleType>
3502 </xsd:schema>
```

3503

3504 APPENDIX B. Reliable Messaging Bindings

3505 The reliability contracts defined in Section 8 may be implemented by profiling different reliability
3506 specifications. Either one of two OASIS reliability specifications may be used by an MSH implementation:
3507 WS-Reliability 1.1 [WS-R11], or WS-ReliableMessaging 1.1 [WSRM11].

3508 Although either one of the above OASIS reliability specifications is sufficient, each one has strong
3509 arguments in favor of its use. In the same way as two MSH implementations must support the same
3510 transfer protocol or cryptographic algorithms in order to interoperate, two MSHs must also implement the
3511 same reliability specification in order to have interoperable reliability features. The reliability specification
3512 being used in an implementation is a parameter of the conformance profiles for ebMS (see Section G).

3513 B.1. WS-Reliability Binding

3514 B.1.1. Operations and Contracts Binding

3515 The Reliable Messaging Processor (RMP) in ebMS is instantiated by the RMP as defined in WS-Reliability
3516 1.1. To avoid confusion, we will call the RMP as defined in WS-Reliability 1.1 the WSR-RMP.

3517 The RMP abstract operations RM-Submit, RM-Deliver, RM-SubmitResponse, RM-DeliverResponse and
3518 RM-Notify, map respectively to Submit, Deliver, Respond, Notify and Notify in WS-Reliability 1.1. Note that
3519 a single operation in WS-Reliability (Notify) is used to carry both notification of failure, and response
3520 message. In order to avoid confusion with WS-Reliability operations, the MSH operations Submit, Deliver,
3521 Notify, are respectively renamed in this section: MSH-Submit, MSH-Deliver, MSH-Notify.

3522 The reliability contracts At-Least-Once Delivery, At-Most-Once Delivery and In-Order Delivery respectively
3523 map to the RM agreement items: GuaranteedDelivery, NoDuplicateDelivery, OrderedDelivery in WS-
3524 Reliability.

- 3525 • Message processing faults such as FeatureNotSupported, PermanentProcessingFailure, or
3526 GroupAborted faults, when received by an RMP must be communicated to the MSH. The MSH
3527 must escalate such faults as DysfunctionalReliability ebMS errors (EBMS:0201).
- 3528 • Message format faults, if they result in non-delivery, must be escalated as DeliveryFailure ebMS
3529 errors (EBMS:0202).

3530 B.1.2. Complement to the Reliability of the One-Way/Push MEP

3531 When At-Least-Once delivery is required, it is RECOMMENDED that an Initiator MSH be made aware of a
3532 delivery failure from the Responder MSH to its Consumer. Such a failure is notified to the Producer party
3533 via MSH-Notify. In order to achieve this awareness, the RM-Deliver operation should be implemented so
3534 that it will fail if the MSH-Deliver invocation fails. In such a case the Responder WSR-RMP generates a
3535 **MessageProcessingFailure** fault, and will not acknowledge the reliable message that has not been
3536 successfully delivered by the Responder MSH to its Consumer.

3537 The RM-Agreement associated with the message, as defined in WS-Reliability, is restricted as follows:

- 3538 • In case ReplyPattern has value "Poll" in a message sent reliably, the PollRequest sent later by the
3539 sending RMP for this message must be synchronous (the ReplyTo element MUST NOT be
3540 present).

3541 B.1.3. Complement to the Reliability of the One-Way/Pull MEP

3542 When At-Least-Once delivery is required, it is RECOMMENDED that a Responder MSH be made aware
3543 of a delivery failure from the Initiator MSH to its Consumer. Such a failure is notified to the Producer party
3544 (Responder side) via MSH-Notify. In order to achieve this awareness, the RM-DeliverResponse operation
3545 should be implemented so that it will fail if the MSH-Deliver invocation fails (Initiator side). In such a case
3546 the Initiator WSR-RMP generates a **MessageProcessingFailure** fault, and will not acknowledge the
3547 reliable message that has not been successfully delivered by the Initiator MSH to its Consumer.

3548 The RM-Agreement associated with the pulled message MUST comply with the following restrictions:

3549

Name	Allowed Values	Additional Requirements
GuaranteedDelivery	"enabled", "disabled"	<p>When enabled, it is REQUIRED that the PullRequest signal message associated with this pulled message be also sent with this parameter enabled. When the PullRequest signal is sent with GuaranteedDelivery enabled, two additional requirements MUST be satisfied:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The ReplyPattern value associated with the PullRequest signal is "Response". 2. The NoDuplicateDelivery agreement item is also enabled for the PullRequest signal. <p>The Responder RMP sends back a copy of the original pulled message if the latter is not expired, when a duplicate of the PullRequest signal is received, e.g. due to resending (see Section 8.3.2). This is achieved by supporting the first option for responding to duplicates of messages sent with Response ReplyPattern (Section 3.2.2 of [WS-Reliability], second part of protocol requirements).</p>
NoDuplicateDelivery	"enabled", "disabled"	When enabled, the PullRequest signal message associated with this pulled message MUST also be sent with this parameter enabled.
OrderedDelivery	"enabled", "disabled"	No restriction.
ReplyPattern	"Callback"	

3550

3551 Note

3552 WS-Reliability 1.1 is silent about the reliability of messages submitted as responses to
3553 other messages, over the same SOAP MEP instance. Such messages would be
3554 submitted using the abstract operation RM-Respond, which requires an WSR-RMP to
3555 correlate the response message with the related request. This specification requires that
3556 the reliability of these responses, in the case of pulled messages, be also supported. by
3557 the Responder MSH. This means that the implementation of WSR-RMP used in an MSH
3558 should also support RM agreements that cover such responses.

3559 **B.1.4. Complement to the Reliability of the Two-Way/Sync MEP**

3560 As already mentioned for the One-Way/Push MEP and the One-Way/Pull MEP when At-Least-Once
3561 delivery is required, it is RECOMMENDED that the Initiator MSH be made aware of a request delivery
3562 failure from the Responder MSH to its Consumer, and also that the Responder MSH be made aware of a
3563 response delivery failure from the Initiator MSH to its Consumer.

3564 The RM-Agreement associated with the request message MUST comply with the same restrictions as for
3565 the One-Way/Push MEP, and also with those entailed by the RM-Agreement options used for the
3566 response message (see below.)

3567 The RM-Agreement associated with the Response message MUST comply with the following restrictions:

3568

Name	Allowed Values	Additional Requirements
GuaranteedDelivery	"enabled", "disabled"	<p>When enabled, it is REQUIRED that the Request message associated with this Response message be also sent with this parameter enabled. When the Request is sent with GuaranteedDelivery enabled, two additional requirements MUST be satisfied:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The ReplyPattern value associated with the PullRequest signal is "Response". 2. The NoDuplicateDelivery agreement item is also enabled for the Request. <p>The Responder WSR-RMP sends back a copy of the original Response message if the latter is not expired, when a duplicate of the Request is received, e.g. due to resending (see Section 8.3.2). This is achieved by supporting the first option for responding to duplicates of messages sent with Response ReplyPattern (Section 3.2.2 of [WS-Reliability], second part of protocol requirements).</p>
NoDuplicateDelivery	"enabled", "disabled"	When enabled, the Request message associated with this Response message MUST also be sent with this parameter enabled.
OrderedDelivery	"enabled", "disabled"	No restriction.
ReplyPattern	"Callback"	

3569

3570
3571
3572
3573

Note
The Request message and Response message do not have to share the same RM-Agreement.

3574 **B.2. WS-ReliableMessaging Binding**

3575 Note

3576 This section is based on the Committee Specification (11 April 2007) of the WS-
3577 ReliableMessaging Version 1.1 specification [WSRM11]. It is possible that updates will be
3578 required in order to conform with the final release of WS-ReliableMessaging as OASIS
3579 Standard. However, it is expected that such updates, if any, will be minor and can be
3580 handled via the errata process.

3581 **B.2.1. Operations and Contracts Binding**

3582 The Reliable Messaging Processor (RMP) in ebMS is mapping to the following notions in WS-RM [WS-
3583 ReliableMessaging]: the Sending RMP maps to RMS (Reliable Messaging Source), the Receiving RMP
3584 maps to RMD (Reliable Messaging Destination).

3585 The RMP abstract operations RM-Submit, RM-Deliver, map respectively to Send, Deliver in WSRM. So do
3586 RM-SubmitResponse, RM-DeliverResponse, as there is no distinction in applying reliability features to a
3587 SOAP request and to a SOAP response in WS-RM. RM-Notify must be implemented so that failures
3588 detected by RMS are escalated to the MSH as follows:

- 3589 • CreateSequenceRefused, SequenceTerminated, SequenceClosed, MessageNumberRollover or
3590 UnknownSequence faults, when received by an RMS and when the RMS cannot establish a
3591 substitute sequence that would support reliable transmission of messages in the same conditions
3592 as the failed sequence would have, must be communicated to the MSH on the Source side. The
3593 MSH must escalate such faults as DysfunctionalReliability ebMS errors (EBMS:0201).
- 3594 • WSRM-Required fault, when received by an RMS, must be communicated to the MSH on Source
3595 side. The MSH must escalate such faults as ProcessingModeMismatch (EBMS:0010). It is
3596 recommended to report the RM Error code in the ErrorDetail element of EBMS:0010.
- 3597 • InvalidAcknowledgment and UnknownSequence, when received by the RMD, must be
3598 communicated to the MSH on Destination side. The MSH must escalate such faults as
3599 DysfunctionalReliability ebMS errors (EBMS:0201).

3600 The reliability contracts At-Least-Once Delivery, At-Most-Once Delivery and In-Order Delivery map to
3601 equivalent delivery assurance definitions in the WS-RM specification. Although WS-RM does not
3602 mandate support for these delivery assurances (DAs), and only specifies the protocol aspect, a
3603 conformance profile supporting reliable messaging requires the use of a WS-RM implementation (RMD)
3604 that supports at least some of these DAs as extensions.

3605 It is RECOMMENDED that all messages transmitted over a same sequence use the same MPC. This
3606 becomes a requirement for the In-Order reliability contract.

3607 Note: the WS-RM protocol always assumes acknowledgment of messages. Although acknowledgments
3608 are unnecessary for the At-Most-Once reliability contract, the use of sequence numbers allows for an
3609 efficient duplicate detection. It is then RECOMMENDED to use the WS-RM protocol for At-Most-Once.

3610 Parameters of the WS-RM protocol such as acknowledgment interval, timeouts, resending frequency, etc.
3611 MAY be specified in the Processing Mode, as extensions to the PMode.Reliability group (see Appendix D).

3612 Sequence acknowledgments and sequence operations (such as CreateSequence,
3613 CreateSequenceResponse) MUST use MEPs of the underlying protocol in a way that is compatible with
3614 the conformance profile of the MSH which defines the ebMS MEPs that must be supported, along with the
3615 underlying protocol binding. For example, if the ebMS conformance profile for an MSH only requires ebMS
3616 messages to be reliably pulled by this MSH over HTTP, then their sequence must either be created by a
3617 CreateSequence message carried over an HTTP response, the HTTP request being initiated by this MSH,
3618 or be offered (using wsrn:Offer) by the CreateSequence used for opening a sequence for sending Pull
3619 signals reliably.

3620 Either one of the two following options MUST be used, in order to enable MSH interoperability based on
3621 WS-ReliableMessaging, regarding the reliability contracts for messages exchanged between two MSHs:

- 3622 1. The reliability contract and parameters apply equally to all messages sent between two MSHs. All
3623 messages exchanged in the same direction between two MSHs are subject to the same reliability
3624 quality of service. In such a case, the P-Modes.Reliability parameters associated with each one of
3625 these messages must not conflict with this common quality of service.

3626 2. The reliability contract and parameters MAY vary from one message to the other. In that case, the
3627 scope of application of a reliability contract MUST be the sequence, meaning all messages within
3628 the same sequence are subject to the same reliability contract.

3629 When support for case (2) above is required, the source of a sequence (RMS) must be able to indicate
3630 which delivery assurance is associated with this sequence, so that the RMD implements the expected DA.
3631 Indeed, although both MSHs share knowledge of the reliability contracts associated with each message
3632 (P-Mode.reliability), the RMD has no access to the ebMS header, and can only rely on the sequence
3633 number. In order to avoid the constraint of using predefined sequence numbers, the association DA-
3634 sequence must be dynamically supported by an RMS. Consequently, an implementation of WS-
3635 ReliableMessaging that supports case (2) MUST also support the extension of the wsrmp:CreateSequence
3636 element with a child element structured as a policy assertion as defined in [WSRMP11], i.e. either one of
3637 the following:

```
3638 (a) <wsrmp:AtLeastOnceDelivery wsrmp:InOrder='true|false' />  
3639 (b) <wsrmp:AtMostOnceDelivery wsrmp:InOrder='true|false' />  
3640 (c) <wsrmp:ExactlyOnceDelivery wsrmp:InOrder='true|false' />
```

3641 The above extensions MUST also be supported in wsrmp:Accept/{any} and understood, in case of a
3642 conformance profile that requires support for reliable One-Way/Pull or reliable Two-Way/Sync. It is also
3643 RECOMMENDED that the above extensions be supported in wsrmp:Offer/{any} and understood.

3644 The above DA assertion (a) must match a P-Mode.Reliability with parameters AtMostOnce.Contract =
3645 "false", AtLeastOnce.Contract = "true"; and its attribute @wsrmp:InOrder must match the InOrder.Contract
3646 value.

3647 The above DA assertion (b) must match a P-Mode.Reliability with parameters AtMostOnce.Contract =
3648 "true", AtLeastOnce.Contract = "false"; and its attribute @wsrmp:InOrder must match the InOrder.Contract
3649 value.

3650 The above DA assertion (c) must match a P-Mode.Reliability with parameters AtMostOnce.Contract =
3651 "true", AtLeastOnce.Contract = "true"; and its attribute @wsrmp:InOrder must match the InOrder.Contract
3652 value.

3653 Additional reliability parameters – if any, e.g. resending frequency, etc. - associated with each one of the
3654 reliability contracts (At-Least-Once, At-Most-Once, In-Order) are to be defined in P-Mode.Reliability
3655 extensions and known from both parties prior to the exchange with no need to be transmitted via the RM
3656 protocol. When receiving a CreateSequence message with the above extension specifying a reliability
3657 contract, the RMD MUST be able to resolve it to a single set of additional parameters governing this mode
3658 of reliability. For example, the P-Modes of all messages sent under At-Least-Once should have same
3659 values for the set of PMode.Reliability parameters related to this contract (AcksTo, AcksOnDelivery,
3660 ReplyPattern and any other custom parameters such as those controlling message resending, if any), as
3661 well as for the NotifyProducerDeliveryFailures parameter about failure reporting.

3662 Because acknowledgments in WS-ReliableMessaging are on receipt, the Reliability.AckOnDelivery
3663 parameter in the P-Mode of messages sent reliably MUST be "false".

3664 **B.2.2. Complement to the Reliability of the One-Way/Push MEP**

3665 When At-Least-Once delivery is required for the ebMS User message carried by this MEP, the RMP on
3666 Initiator side is acting as an RMS, and the RMP on Responder side is acting as an RMD.

3667 It is RECOMMENDED that the sequence be initiated by the RMS sending a wsrmp:CreateSequence
3668 message, as opposed to responding to an wsrmp:Offer.

3669 In case the P-Mode.Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern has value "Response", then the
3670 CreateSequence/AcksTo element MUST contain an WS-Addressing anonymous IRI.

3671 In case the P-Mode.Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern has value "Callback", then the
3672 CreateSequence/AcksTo element MUST contain a URI specified in an additional P-Mode.Reliability
3673 parameter.

3674 The P-Mode.Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern MUST NOT have value "Poll",

3675 When an underlying two-way protocol is used, any pair of sequence lifecycle message
3676 (CreateSequence/CreateSequenceResponse, CloseSequence/CloseSequenceResponse,
3677 TerminateSequence/ TerminateSequenceResponse) SHOULD be exchanged over a single request-

3678 response MEP of the protocol.

3679 It is RECOMMENDED that the Initiator MSH be made aware of a delivery failure from the Responder MSH
3680 to its Consumer (NotifyProducerDeliveryFailures = "true"). Such a failure is notified to the Producer party
3681 via Notify.

3682 • A failure to deliver that is detected by the RMS, e.g. failure to get an acknowledgment for a sent
3683 message, must be communicated to the Initiator MSH. The MSH must escalate such a fault as
3684 DeliveryFailure ebMS errors (EBMS:0202).

3685 • A failure to deliver that is detected by the RMD (Responder side), e.g. failure to deliver (operation
3686 Deliver) after the message has been received and acknowledged by the RMD, must be
3687 communicated to the Responder MSH. The MSH must escalate such a fault as DeliveryFailure
3688 ebMS errors (EBMS:0202). It is RECOMMENDED that this ebMS error be reported to the Initiator
3689 MSH.

3690 **B.2.3. Complement to the Reliability of the One-Way/Pull MEP**

3691 When At-Least-Once delivery is required for the ebMS User message carried by this MEP, the RMP on
3692 Responder side is acting as an RMS, and the RMP on Initiator side (which sent the PullRequest) is acting
3693 as an RMD.

3694 When initiating an instance of the One-Way/Pull MEP, and if it is expected – based on P-Modes deployed
3695 - that pulled message may be sent reliably, then the PullRequest signal itself MUST be sent under At-
3696 Least-Once delivery (see Section 8). Acknowledgments for Pull signals should be sent over the second
3697 leg of the One-Way/Pull MEP (PMode.Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern = "Response"), bundled with
3698 the pulled ebMS user message. However the frequency of acknowledgments may not need be on a per
3699 message basis.

3700 In case pulled messages must be sent reliably, the following requirements apply:

3701 • When a sequence is initiated (CreateSequence) to be associated with PullRequest signals
3702 intended for the same MPC, then the wsrm:Offer MUST be present in the CreateSequence
3703 element. The offered sequence SHOULD be used for sending back pulled messages reliably.

3704 • When no more messages have to be pulled reliably from an MPC, it is RECOMMENDED that the
3705 Sending MSH closes and terminate the associated sequences. When the Sending MSH decides
3706 to terminate a reliable sequence of pulled messages, a CloseSequence message or a
3707 TerminateSequence SHOULD be sent over a pulled message, e.g. piggybacked over the
3708 EmptyMessagePartitionChannel warning (EBMS:0006).

3709 It is RECOMMENDED that the Responder MSH be made aware of a delivery failure from the Initiator MSH
3710 to its Consumer. Such a failure is notified to the Producer party (Responder side) via Notify.

3711 • A failure to deliver that is detected by the RMS, e.g. failure to get an acknowledgment on the
3712 Responder side for a sent message, must be communicated to the Responder MSH. The MSH
3713 must escalate such a fault as DeliveryFailure ebMS errors (EBMS:0202).

3714 • A failure to deliver that is detected by the RMD (Initiator side), e.g. failure to deliver (operations
3715 Deliver) after the message has been received and acknowledged by the RMD must be
3716 communicated to the Initiator MSH. The MSH must escalate such a fault as DeliveryFailure ebMS
3717 errors (EBMS:0202). It is RECOMMENDED that this ebMS error be reported to the Responder
3718 MSH.

3719 **B.2.4. Complement to the Reliability of the Two-Way/Sync MEP**

3720 In the reliable Two-Way/Sync MEP, either:

3721 • The request message alone is sent reliably, in which case the requirements and
3722 recommendations for the One-Way/Push also apply here.

3723 • Or both the request and the reply are sent reliably. The response alone SHALL NOT be sent
3724 reliably.

3725 In case both request and reply are sent reliably, it is RECOMMENDED that both sequences are
3726 established and discarded in a coordinated way. The same rules apply as for the reliability of the One-way
3727 Pull MEP. The in-bound sequence termination SHOULD be terminated on the initiative of the MEP

3728 Initiator, after the out-bound sequence is terminated.

APPENDIX C. SOAP Format and Bindings

3729

3730 This appendix specifies the SOAP format (SOAP versions, packaging of attachments and/or binary data)
3731 used in ebMS-3, as well as how this SOAP format is transported over HTTP [HTTP11]and SMTP [SMTP].

3732 ebMS-3 does not require the usage of SOAP-1.1 and/or SwA (SOAP-1.1 With Attachments). We
3733 consider the attachments specification of SwA as being orthogonal to the SOAP version. In other words,
3734 attachments could well be used for SOAP 1.2 in the same way they are used for SOAP 1.1. Similarly, we
3735 also consider MTOM being orthogonal to the SOAP version (however, MTOM will not be addressed in this
3736 core specification).

3737 A conformant implementation of ebMS-3 may well choose to use SOAP-1.2 instead of SOAP-1.1. Since
3738 SwA is orthogonal to the SOAP version, there are two possibilities:

3739 (1) An implementation of ebMS-3 may choose SOAP-1.1 with Attachments

3740 (2) An implementation of ebMS-3 may choose SOAP-1.2 with Attachments

3741 Although a SOAP 1.2 version of SwA has not been formally submitted to W3C, it appears that most SOAP
3742 products have anticipated that usage, and after investigation, it appears that they have done so in a
3743 consistent, interoperable way. This specification is acknowledging these *de facto* upgrades of SwA, which
3744 are summarized below.

3745 SwA uses the multipart/related MIME encapsulation. This encapsulation is independent of the version of
3746 SOAP being used (in fact it can encapsulate any XML document, not just SOAP), and also independent of
3747 the transport protocol (the encapsulation could be transported via HTTP, SMTP, etc.).

3748 C.1. Using SwA with SOAP-1.1

3749 The following example shows an ebMS-3 message using SOAP 1.1 with attachments. The ebMS-3
3750 message in this example contains two payloads:

- 3751 • The first payload is the picture of a car. This picture is in binary form as an attachment with a
3752 Content-ID equal to "car-photo@cars.example.com".
- 3753 • The second payload is an XML fragment within the SOAP body. This XML fragment has id
3754 attribute equal to "carData"

3755 The XML fragment in the SOAP body contains a reference to another binary data, namely the picture of
3756 the car owner):

```
3757 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary; type=text/xml;  
3758 start="<car-data@cars.example.com>"  
3759  
3760 --MIME_boundary  
3761 Content-Type: text/xml; charset=UTF-8  
3762 Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit  
3763 Content-ID: <car-data@cars.example.com>  
3764  
3765 <?xml version='1.0' ?>  
3766 <S11:Envelope xmlns:S11="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
3767 xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">  
3768 <S11:Header>  
3769 <eb:Messaging S11:mustUnderstand="1">  
3770 ...  
3771 <eb:PayloadInfo>  
3772 <eb:PartInfo href="cid:car-photo@cars.example.com" />  
3773 <eb:PartInfo href="#carData" />  
3774 </eb:PayloadInfo>  
3775 </eb:Messaging>  
3776 </S11:Header>  
3777 <S11:Body>  
3778 <t:Data id="carData" xmlns:t="http://cars.example.com">  
3779 <t:Mileage>20000</t:Mileage>  
3780 <t:OwnerPicture href="cid:picture-of-owner@cars.example.com"/>  
3781 </t:Data>  
3782 </S11:Body>  
3783 </S11:Envelope>
```

3785

```

3786 --MIME_boundary
3787 Content-Type: image/tiff
3788 Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
3789 Content-ID: <car-photo@cars.example.com>
3790
3791 ...binary TIFF image of the car...
3792
3793 --MIME_boundary-
3794 Content-Type: image/tiff
3795 Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
3796 Content-ID: <picture-of-owner@cars.example.com>
3797
3798 ...binary TIFF image of the car's owner...
3799 --MIME_boundary-
3800

```

3801 **Example 1: SOAP-1.1 with Attachment**

3802 **C.2. Using SwA with SOAP-1.2**

3803 The following (Example 2) shows the same message given in Example 1 above, except that SOAP-1.2 is
3804 being used instead of SOAP-1.1:

```

3805 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary;
3806 type=application/soap+xml;
3807 start="<car-data@cars.example.com>"
3808
3809 --MIME_boundary
3810 Content-Type: application/soap+xml; charset=UTF-8
3811 Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
3812 Content-ID: <car-data@cars.example.com>
3813
3814 <?xml version='1.0' ?>
3815 <S12:Envelope xmlns:S12="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
3816 xmlns:eb="http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/">
3817 <S12:Header>
3818 <eb:Messaging S12:mustUnderstand="true">
3819 ...
3820 <eb:PayloadInfo>
3821 <eb:PartInfo href="cid:car-photo" />
3822 <eb:PartInfo href="#carData" />
3823 </eb:PayloadInfo>
3824 </eb:Messaging>
3825 </S12:Header>
3826
3827 <S12:Body>
3828 <t:Data id="carData" xmlns:t="http://car.example.com">
3829 <t:Mileage>20000</t:Mileage>
3830 <t:OwnerPicture href="cid:picture-of-owner"/>
3831 </t:Data>
3832 </S12:Body>
3833 </S12:Envelope>
3834
3835 --MIME_boundary
3836 Content-Type: image/tiff
3837 Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
3838 Content-ID: <car-photo@cars.example.com>
3839
3840 ...binary TIFF image of the car...
3841
3842 --MIME_boundary
3843 Content-Type: image/tiff
3844 Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
3845 Content-ID: <picture-of-owner@cars.example.com>
3846
3847 ...binary TIFF image of the car's owner...
3848
3849 --MIME_boundary--

```

3850 **Example 2: SOAP-1.2 with Attachments**

3851 What were the differences between Example 1 and Example 2 (SOAP 1.1/SOAP 1.2 with attachments)?
3852 The differences are the following:

- 3853 • In SOAP 1.1, the namespace of the SOAP elements (Envelope, Header, and Body) is

3854 http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/ versus the namespace
3855 http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope for SOAP 1.2

- 3856 • In SOAP 1.1, the attribute mustUnderstand takes 0 or 1 as values, whereas in SOAP 1.2, the
3857 values for the attribute mustUnderstand are true and false.

3858 Another difference between SOAP 1.1 and SOAP 1.2 would be in the SOAPAction header. When using
3859 HTTP as the transport protocol, there will be an HTTP header called SOAPAction if SOAP 1.1 is being
3860 used. If SOAP 1.2 is used, instead of the SOAPAction header there will be an action parameter, as
3861 illustrated in the following listings:

```
3862 SOAPAction: leasing  
3863 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary; type=text/xml;  
3864 start="<car-data@cars.example.com>"
```

3865 HTTP headers when using SOAP 1.1 with attachments

3866

```
3867 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary;  
3868 type=application/soap+xml;  
3869 start="<car-data@cars.example.com>"; action=leasing
```

3870 HTTP headers when using SOAP 1.2 with attachments

3871 C.3. SMTP Binding

3872 When using SMTP transport, the Mime-Version header MUST be present (among other SMTP-related
3873 headers such as To, From, Date, etc.). The following listings show the headers for both SOAP 1.1 and
3874 SOAP 1.2 over SMTP:

```
3875 From: user@customer.example.com  
3876 To: leasing-office@cars.example.com  
3877 Date: Mon, 23 Jan 2006 17:33:00 CST  
3878 Mime-Version: 1.0  
3879 SOAPAction: leasing  
3880 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary; type=text/xml;  
3881 start="<car-data@cars.example.com>"
```

3882 SMTP headers when using SOAP 1.1 with attachments

3883

```
3884 From: user@customer.example.com  
3885 To: leasing-office@cars.example.com  
3886 Date: Mon, 23 Jan 2006 17:33:00 CST  
3887 Mime-Version: 1.0  
3888 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary;  
3889 type=application/soap+xml;  
3890 start="<car-data@cars.example.com>"; action=leasing
```

3891 SMTP headers when using SOAP 1.2 with attachments

3892 The remaining portions of the messages in the two examples above are respectively the same as the first
3893 two HTTP binding examples of Section C.

3894 **Note:**

3895 This binding applies only to the ebMS One-Way/Push or Two-Way/Push-and-Push MEPs.
3896 An SMTP binding for the other ebMS MEPs involving the Pull or Synchronous transfer
3897 features would require an SMTP binding of the SOAP Request-Response MEP; for
3898 example, [SOAPEMAIL]. Use of such bindings are out of scope of this specification, and
3899 may be detailed in a forthcoming Part 2 of this specification.

3900 APPENDIX D. Processing Modes

3901 D.1. Objectives and Usage

3902 A Processing Mode (or P-Mode) is a collection of parameters that determine how messages are
3903 exchanged between a pair of MSHs with respect to quality of service, transmission mode, and error
3904 handling.

3905 A P-Mode may be viewed and used in two ways:

- 3906 • It is an agreement between two parties as to how messages must be processed, on both the
3907 sending and receiving sides. Both MSHs must be able to associate the same P-Mode with a
3908 message, as this is necessary for consistent processing (of security, reliability, message
3909 exchange pattern, etc.) end-to-end.
- 3910 • It is configuration data for a Sending MSH, as well as for a Receiving MSH.

3911 Several P-Mode instances may be used to govern the processing of different messages between two
3912 MSHs. A P-Mode is usually associated with a class of messages that is identified by some common
3913 header values – e.g. the class of messages sharing same values for eb:Service, eb:Action, and
3914 eb:AgreementRef.

3915 More abstractly, a P-Mode is said to be *deployed* on an MSH when it is governing the processing of an
3916 associated class of messages on the MSH.

3917 Before a message is sent, the Sending MSH must be able to determine which P-Mode is used for this
3918 message. The process to determine this is left to each implementation – here are three examples:

3919 **Example 1:** Several P-Modes have been deployed on the Sending MSH, one for each triple
3920 Service/Action/AgreementRef that is expected to be used in messages. When a message is submitted to
3921 a Sending MSH via an API, the Service, Action and AgreementRef to be put in the message header are
3922 also passed as arguments, along with the payload. The Sending MSH selects the P-Mode to be used for
3923 this message based on the values for Service/Action/AgreementRef, and completes the message header
3924 using other parameter values from the matched P-Mode (e.g. MPC, Role, PartyId, and the right content
3925 for the Reliable Messaging and Security headers). On the receiving side, the MSH will also associate the
3926 same P-Mode with this message.

3927 **Example 2:** Several P-Modes have been deployed on the Sending MSH, and are given an ID (see
3928 PMode.ID below). When a message is submitted to a Sending MSH via an API, the ID of the P-Mode it is
3929 associated with is explicitly provided, along with the payload. The Sending MSH then completes the
3930 message header using parameter values from the associated P-Mode (e.g. MPC, AgreementRef, Role,
3931 Service, Action...). When sending the message, the MSH also adds the P-Mode.ID in the header (as
3932 value of the AgreementRef/@pmode attribute), so that the association with the appropriate P-Mode is
3933 done unambiguously and faster by the Receiving MSH.

3934 **Example 3:** A P-Mode has been deployed on the Sending MSH, which is a constrained device with a light
3935 conformance profile. Because this device is always supposed to process messages in the same way, the
3936 P-Mode is largely hard-coded in the implementation and only a few parameters are left for users to decide
3937 as their configuration choice.

3938 This specification is only concerned with defining an abstract model for the P-Mode. It enumerates
3939 parameters and states their semantics w/r to the features described in the specification. This P-Mode data
3940 model is not concerned with a detailed representation for these parameters and their content, which is left
3941 to a P-Mode representation choice. The objective of these parameters is to represent abstract controls for
3942 these specification features, which can be used as a basis for configuring an implementation or can be
3943 communicated between parties via a concrete representation on which they need to agree.

3944 For example, the parameter: PMode[1].Security.X509.Signature.Certificate simply assumes that the
3945 implementation is given a way to identify and access a certificate for the signature function. The
3946 representation details for this certificate identification are left to another document to specify – e.g. a P-
3947 Mode binding to WS-Policy [WSPOLICY] assertions (such as WS-SecurityPolicy [WSSECPOL]).

3948 A P-Mode, or set of P-Modes, may also be represented as parts of a CPA document, the details of which
3949 are out of scope of this Appendix.

3950 In order to promote the portability of P-Mode representations across MSH implementations, a
3951 conformance profile may require support for a particular P-Mode representation.
3952 An implementation may decide to extend the P-Mode data model specified here, with additional
3953 parameters. Conversely, depending on its conformance profile an implementation may only need to
3954 support a subset of the P-Mode parameters described here.

3955 **D.2. Model for Processing Modes**

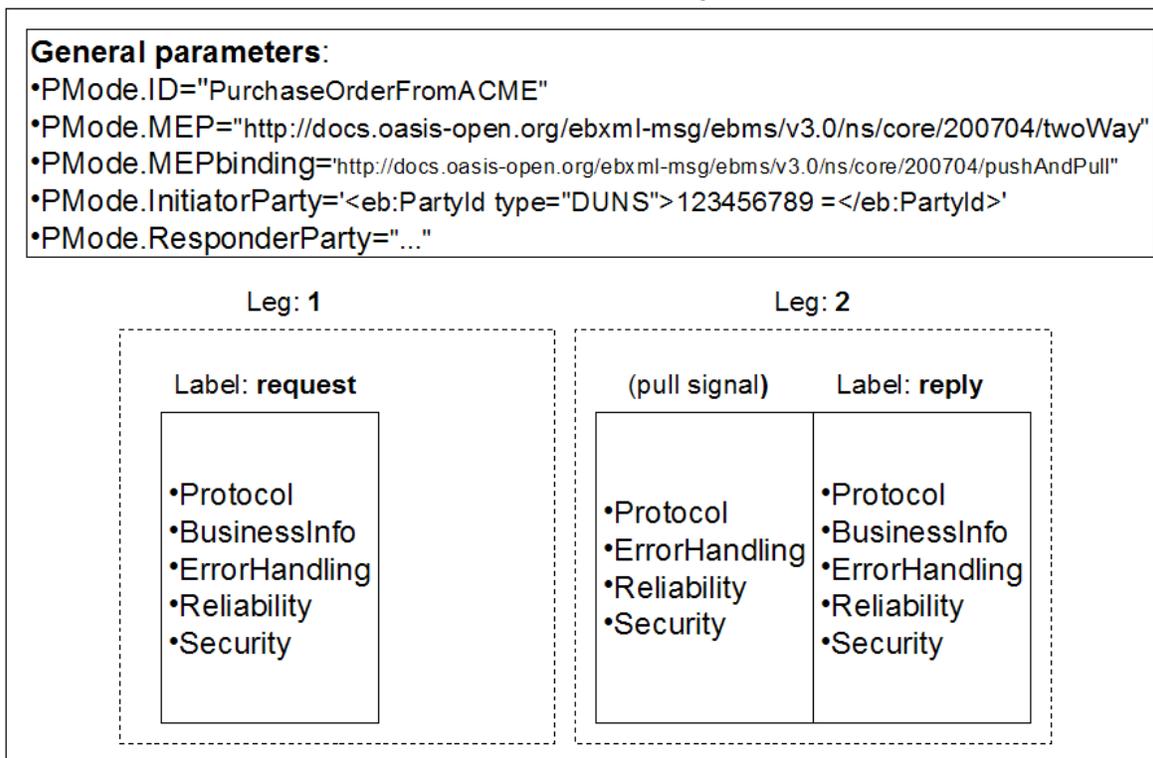
3956 A P-Mode actually governs the transmission of all the messages involved in an ebMS MEP between two
3957 MSHs. P-Mode parameters are grouped into six functional categories, also called P-Mode features (see
3958 Section 4):

- 3959 • **General Parameters:** as a P-Mode concerns all messages in an ebMS MEP, these parameters
3960 are not associated with any particular message in the MEP, but are attributes of the entire MEP.
- 3961 • **Protocol:** defines protocol-related parameters necessary for interoperating, that are associated
3962 with a particular message of the MEP.
- 3963 • **BusinessInfo:** defines the business profile of a user message in terms of business header
3964 elements and their values (e.g. Service, Action) or other items with business significance (payload
3965 profile, MPC).
- 3966 • **ErrorHandling:** defines the mode of handling and of reporting of errors associated with the
3967 message in this leg.
- 3968 • **Reliability:** defines the reliability contracts and their parameters, applying to the message in this
3969 leg.
- 3970 • **Security:** defines the security level expected for the message in the exchange, and provides
3971 related security context data.

3972 Because messages in the same MEP may be subject to different requirements - e.g. the reliability,
3973 security and error reporting of a response may not be the same as for a request – the P-Mode will be
3974 divided into "legs". Each user message label in an ebMS MEP is associated with a P-Mode leg. Each P-
3975 Mode leg has a full set of parameters of the six categories above (except for General Parameters), even
3976 though in many cases parameters will have same value across the MEP legs. Signal messages that
3977 implement transport channel bindings (such as PullRequest) are also controlled by the same categories of
3978 parameters, except for BusinessInfo group.

3979 The following figure illustrates the general structure of a P-Mode for a Two-Way/Push-and-Pull MEP; for
3980 example, a PurchaseOrder business transaction that includes the pair PurchaseOrderRequest +
3981 PurchaseOrderConfirm. Its binding channel is "Push-and-Pull" e.g. because the buyer cannot receive
3982 incoming requests.

Overall P-Mode Structure for a Two-Way/Push-and-Pull MEP



3983 *Figure 15: P-Mode Structure for Two-Way/Push-and-Pull MEP*

3984 In the above illustration, each leg of the MEP may have different P-Mode parameters, although in many
 3985 cases these parameters will be identical from one leg to the other. Because the P-Mode specifies the
 3986 MEP transport channel binding, it may also specify a set of parameters for the Pull signal, which may be
 3987 subject to specific requirements (reliability, security/authorization).

3988 **Note:**

3989 In general, a Pull signal cannot be precisely targeted to a particular MEP, but instead to
 3990 an MPC. For this reason, all Pull signals for a particular MPC will usually share similar P-
 3991 Mode parameters.

3992 **D.2.1. Notation**

3993 Consider a PurchaseOrder business transaction as defined above.

- 3994 • The P-Mode associated with this type of transaction between two partners, may be called:
 3995 **PurchaseOrder.PMode.**
- 3996 • An index notation is used to identify the legs of an MEP. The part of the P-Mode that relates to
 3997 Leg 1 of the PurchaseOrder MEP ("request" label), will be called
 3998 **PurchaseOrder.PMode[request]**. A number representing the occurrence order may be used
 3999 instead of the leg label, e.g. **PurchaseOrder.PMode[1]**. This is appropriate for a MEP in which
 4000 the legs are strictly serialized over time.
- 4001 • In case there are two sets of P-Mode parameters associated with a leg, as for the pulled "reply",
 4002 the part of the P-Mode that concerns the user message in leg 2 is noted:
 4003 **PurchaseOrder.PMode[2][u]**, while the part of the P-Mode that concerns the (pull) signal
 4004 message in leg 2 is noted: **PurchaseOrder.PMode[2][s]**.

4005 D.3. Processing Mode Parameters

4006 P-Mode parameters define how a message should be processed. These parameters either define
4007 elements that are expected to be found in the message, or processing behavior expected for this
4008 message (e.g. level of reliability, error reporting). Every parameter in this section does not need to be
4009 given a value when defining a P-Mode. In such a case, either the corresponding header element can
4010 take any value for a message processed under this P-Mode, or the MSH behavior this parameter controls
4011 is not constrained by the P-Mode. It is also possible to associate multiple authorized values (or a range of
4012 values) with a parameter in a P-Mode (e.g. multiple MPC values).

4013 D.3.1. General P-Mode Parameters

4014 The general P-Mode parameters (i.e. not specific to any single message in the MEP) are:

- 4015 • **PMode.ID:** (optional) The identifier for the P-Mode, e.g. the name of the business transaction:
4016 PurchaseOrderFromACME. This identifier is user-defined and optional, for the convenience of P-
4017 Mode management. It must uniquely identify the P-Mode among all P-Modes deployed on the
4018 same MSH, and may be absent if the P-Mode is identified by other means, e.g. embedded in a
4019 larger structure that is itself identified, or has parameter values distinct from other P-Modes used
4020 on the same MSH. If the ID is specified, the AgreementRef/@pmode attribute value is also
4021 expected to be set in associated messages.
- 4022 • **PMode.Agreement:** The reference to the agreement governing this message exchange (maps to
4023 eb:AgreementRef in message header).
- 4024 • **PMode.MEP:** The type of ebMS MEP associated with this P-Mode. The value must be a URI, e.g:
4025 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/oneWay>.
- 4026 • **PMode.MEPbinding:** The transport channel binding assigned to the MEP (push, pull, sync, push-
4027 and-push, push-and-pull, pull-and-push, pull-and-pull, ...). The value must be a URI, e.g:
4028 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/push>.
- 4029 • **PMode.Initiator.Party:** 1.(PMode.Initiator and its subelements are optional if PMode.Responder
4030 is present.) Qualifies the party initiating the MEP (see Section 2.2.3). A user message initiating an
4031 MEP instance under this P-Mode must have its
4032 eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From element contain the same PartyId elements
4033 as the PartyId elements defined in this parameter. Any user message sent to the initiator must
4034 have its eb:PartyInfo/eb:To map to or be compatible with this parameter.
- 4035 • **PMode.Initiator.Role:** Name of the role assumed by the party sending the first message of this
4036 MEP. Either the message element
4037 eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From/eb:Role or the element
4038 eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:To/eb:Role of each message in this
4039 MEP must have this value, depending on the direction of message transfer.
- 4040 • **PMode.Initiator.Authorization.username** and **PMode.Initiator.Authorization.password:**
4041 Describe authorization information for messages sent by Initiator. These parameters need to be
4042 matched by a wsse:UsernameToken element in a message (in a security header only intended for
4043 authorization) for this message to be processed successfully on receiver side – here by
4044 Responder MSH.
- 4045 • **PMode.Responder.Party:** (PMode.Responder and its subelements are optional if PMode.Initiator
4046 is present.) Qualifies the party responding to the initiator party in this MEP. Any user message
4047 sent to the responder must have its eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:To element
4048 contain the same PartyId elements as the PartyId elements defined in this parameter.
- 4049 • **PMode.Responder.Role:** Name of the role assumed by the party receiving the first message of
4050 this MEP. Either the message element
4051 eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:From/eb:Role or the element
4052 eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:PartyInfo/eb:To/eb:Role of each message in this
4053 MEP must have this value, depending on the direction of message transfer.
- 4054 • **PMode.Responder.Authorization.username** and
4055 **PMode.Responder.Authorization.password:** Describe authorization information for messages
4056 sent by Responder. These parameters need to be matched by a wsse:UsernameToken element
4057 in a message (in a security header only intended for authorization) for this message to be
4058 processed successfully on receiver side – here by Initiator MSH.

4059 The P-Mode parameters that are specific to a P-Mode leg (here, associated with leg 1 of an MEP) are
4060 grouped into five categories: Protocol, BusinessInfo, ErrorHandling, Reliability, and Security:

4061 **D.3.2. PMode[1].Protocol**

- 4062 • **PMode[1].Protocol.Address**: the value of this parameter represents the address (endpoint URL)
4063 of the Receiver MSH (or Receiver Party) to which Messages under this P-Mode leg are to be sent.
4064 Note that a URL generally determines the transport protocol (for example, if the endpoint is an
4065 email address, then the transport protocol must be SMTP; if the address scheme is "http", then
4066 the transport protocol must be HTTP).
- 4067 • **PMode[1].Protocol.SOAPVersion**: this parameter indicates the SOAP version to be used (1.1 or
4068 1.2). In some implementations, this parameter may be constrained by the implementation, and not
4069 set by users.

4070 **D.3.3. PMode[1].BusinessInfo**

4071 Note:

4072 This set of parameters only applies to user messages.

- 4073 • **PMode[1].BusinessInfo.Service**: Name of the service to which the User message is intended to
4074 be delivered. Its content should map to the element
4075 `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:Service`.
- 4076 • **PMode[1].BusinessInfo.Action**: Name of the action the User message is intended to invoke. Its
4077 content should map to the element
4078 `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:Action`
- 4079 • **PMode[1].BusinessInfo.Properties[]**: The value of this parameter is a list of properties. A
4080 property is a data structure that consists of four values: the property name, which can be used as
4081 an identifier of the property (e.g. a required property named "messagetype" can be noted as:
4082 `Properties[messagetype].required="true"`); the property description; the property data type; and a
4083 Boolean value, indicating whether the property is expected or optional, within the User message.
4084 This parameter controls the contents of the element
4085 `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageProperties`.
- 4086 • **PMode[1].BusinessInfo.PayloadProfile[]**: This parameter allows for specifying some constraint
4087 or profile on the payload. It specifies a list of payload parts. A payload part is a data structure that
4088 consists of five properties: name (or Content-ID) that is the part identifier, and can be used as an
4089 index in the notation `PayloadProfile[]`; MIME data type (`text/xml`, `application/pdf`, etc.); name of the
4090 applicable XML Schema file if the MIME data type is `text/xml`; maximum size in kilobytes; and a
4091 Boolean value indicating whether the part is expected or optional, within the User message. The
4092 message payload(s) must match this profile.
- 4093 • **PMode[1].BusinessInfo.PayloadProfile.maxSize**:: This parameter allows for specifying a
4094 maximum size in kilobytes for the entire payload, i.e. for the total of all payload parts.
- 4095 • **PMode[1].BusinessInfo.MPC**: The value of this parameter is the identifier of the MPC (Message
4096 Partition Channel) to which the message is assigned. It maps to the attribute
4097 `eb:Messaging/eb:UserMessage/@mpc`.

4098 **D.3.4. PMode[1].ErrorHandling**

4099 Note:

4100 This P-Mode group concerns errors generated by the reception of the message (for either
4101 a User message or a Signal message, unless indicated otherwise) sent over leg 1 of the
4102 MEP.

- 4103 • **PMode[1].ErrorHandling.Report.SenderErrorsTo**: This parameter indicates the address, or
4104 comma-separated list of addresses, to which to send ebMS errors generated by the MSH that
4105 was trying to send the message in error.
- 4106 • **PMode[1].ErrorHandling.Report.ReceiverErrorsTo**: This parameter indicates the address, or
4107 comma-separated list of addresses, to which to send ebMS errors generated by the MSH that
4108 receives the message in error; e.g. this may be the address of the MSH sending the message in
4109 error.

- 4110 • **PMode[1].ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse:** This Boolean parameter indicates whether (if
4111 "true") errors generated from receiving a message in error are sent over the back-channel of the
4112 underlying protocol associated with the message in error, or not.
- 4113 • **PMode[1].ErrorHandling.Report.ProcessErrorNotifyConsumer:** This Boolean parameter
4114 indicates whether (if "true") the Consumer (application/party) of a User Message matching this P-
4115 Mode should be notified when an error occurs in the Receiving MSH, during processing of the
4116 received User message.
- 4117 • **PMode[1].ErrorHandling.Report.ProcessErrorNotifyProducer:** This Boolean parameter
4118 indicates whether (if "true") the Producer (application/party) of a User Message matching this P-
4119 Mode should be notified when an error occurs in the Sending MSH, during processing of the User
4120 Message to be sent.
- 4121 • **PMode[1].ErrorHandling.Report.DeliveryFailuresNotifyProducer:** This Boolean parameter
4122 indicates whether (if "true") the Producer (application/party) of a User Message matching this P-
4123 Mode must always be notified when the delivery to Consumer failed, or whether (if "false"), in
4124 some cases, it is sufficient to notify the Consumer only
4125 (Report.ProcessErrorNotifyConsumer="true"). This assumes that Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract
4126 is "true". This also assumes that the Sending MSH implementation has the ability to determine or
4127 to be made aware of all cases of non-delivery that occur after the message has been received by
4128 the Receiving MSH.

4129 D.3.5. PMode[1].Reliability

- 4130 • **PMode[1].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract:** If "true", this Boolean parameter indicates that the
4131 "At-Least-Once" reliability contract (see Section 8.2.2) is to be used between MSH and Consumer
4132 (Guaranteed Delivery). It also indicates that this contract applies to ebMS signals (see Section
4133 8.2.1) – e.g. PullRequest – between the receiving reliability module and the next MSH component
4134 (e.g. RM-Consumer).
- 4135 • **PMode[1].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract.AckOnDelivery:** This Boolean parameter indicates
4136 the semantics of acknowledgments that are generated by the reliability module. It is usually
4137 constrained by the implementation and not set by users. For User messages: if "true", the
4138 acknowledgment is only sent after the message has been delivered by the MSH to the Consumer
4139 entity (see Case 2 in Section 8.2.4). If "false", the only guarantee for the sender when receiving an
4140 acknowledgment is that the User message has been well received (see Case 1 or 3 in Section
4141 8.2.4), and made available for further processing within the MSH. For Signal messages – e.g.
4142 PullRequest: if "true", indicates that Signal messages are acknowledged only if delivered (see
4143 Section 8.2.1) from the receiving reliability module to the next MSH component (Case 3 in Section
4144 8.2.4), i.e. to the RM-Consumer (see 8.1.2). If "false", the message acknowledgment only
4145 guarantees receipt of the signal (Case 1 in Section 8.2.4).
- 4146 • **PMode[1].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract.AcksTo:** This parameter is a URI that specifies
4147 where acknowledgments are to be sent. It may contain an anonymous URI (defined in WS-
4148 Addressing). If absent, acknowledgments are to be sent to the same URI associated with the
4149 MSH sending messages reliably.
- 4150 • **PMode[1].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract.AckResponse:** This Boolean is true when an
4151 Acknowledgment must be sent, for a response that is sent reliably.
- 4152 • **PMode[1].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern:** This parameter indicates whether a reliability
4153 acknowledgment is to be sent as a callback, synchronously in the response (back-channel of
4154 underlying protocol), or as response of separate ack pulling. Three values are possible for this
4155 parameter, when using WS-Reliability: "Response", "Callback", or "Poll".
- 4156 • **PMode[1].Reliability.AtMostOnce.Contract:** If "true", this Boolean parameter indicates that "At-
4157 Most-Once" (or duplicate elimination) should be enforced when receiving a message. The
4158 contract is for delivery between MSH and Consumer for User messages (see Section 8.2.2), and
4159 between reliability module and next MSH component for Signal messages (see Section 8.2.1).
- 4160 • **PMode[1].Reliability.InOrder.Contract:** If "true", this Boolean parameter indicates that this
4161 message is part of an ordered sequence. It only concerns User messages (delivery contract
4162 between MSH and Consumer application, see Section 8.2.2).
- 4163 • **PMode[1].Reliability.StartGroup:** This parameter is a Boolean that may be used to indicate if
4164 messages matching this P-Mode must be associated with a new reliability group or sequence. For
4165 example, a particular Service and Action may have the application semantics of initiating a new

- 4166 ordered sequence of messages.
- 4167 • **PMode[1].Reliability.Correlation**: This parameter tells how to correlate a message matching this
- 4168 P-Mode with an existing reliability group or sequence. It is a comma-separated list of XPath
- 4169 elements relative to the eb:Messaging header. Each one of these XPaths identifies an element or
- 4170 attribute inside eb:UserMessage or eb:SignalMessage, and may include predicates. For example,
- 4171 "eb:UserMessage/eb:CollaborationInfo/eb:ConversationId,
- 4172 eb:UserMessage/eb:MessageProperties/eb:Property[@name="ProcessInstance"] will correlate
- 4173 all messages that share the same ConversationId and have the same value for the message
- 4174 property named "ProcessInstance". In case there is no ongoing group or sequence associated
- 4175 with the values in Reliability.Correlation for a message under this P-Mode, then a new
- 4176 group/sequence is started.
- 4177 • **PMode[1].Reliability.TerminateGroup**: This parameter is a Boolean value that may be used to
- 4178 indicate if messages matching this P-Mode must cause the closure of the reliability group or
- 4179 sequence with which they correlate.

4180 D.3.6. PMode[1].Security

- 4181 • **PMode[1].Security.WSSVersion**: This parameter has two possible values, 1.0 and 1.1. The
- 4182 value of this parameter represents the version of WS-Security to be used.
- 4183 • **PMode[1].Security.X509.Sign**: The value of this parameter is a list of the names of XML
- 4184 elements (inside the SOAP envelope) that should be signed, as well as whether or not
- 4185 attachments should also be signed. The list is represented in two sublists that extend this
- 4186 parameter: **Sign.Element[]** and **Sign.Attachment[]**. An element within the Element[] list could be
- 4187 specified either by its XML name or by its qualified name (its XML name and the namespace to
- 4188 which it belongs). An element within the Attachment[] list is identified by the Content-Id.
- 4189 • **PMode[1].Security.X509.Signature.Certificate**: The value of this parameter identifies the public
- 4190 certificate to use when verifying signed data.
- 4191 • **PMode[1].Security.X509.Signature.HashFunction**: The value of this parameter identifies the
- 4192 algorithm that is used to compute the digest of the message being signed. The definitions for
- 4193 these values are in the [XMLDSIG] specification.
- 4194 • **PMode[1].Security.X509.Signature.Algorithm**: The value of this parameter identifies the
- 4195 algorithm that is used to compute the value of the digital signature. The definitions for these
- 4196 values are found in the [XMLDSIG] or [XMLENC] specifications.
- 4197 • **PMode[1].Security.X509.Encryption.Encrypt**: The value of this parameter lists the names of
- 4198 XML elements (inside the SOAP envelope) that should be encrypted, as well as whether or not
- 4199 attachments should also be encrypted. The list is represented in two sublists that extend this
- 4200 parameter: **Encrypt.Element[]** and **Encrypt.Attachment[]**. An element within these lists is
- 4201 identified as in **Security.X509.Sign** lists.
- 4202 • **PMode[1].Security.X509.Encryption.Certificate**: The value of this parameter identifies the
- 4203 public certificate to use when encrypting data.
- 4204 • **PMode[1].Security.X509.Encryption.Algorithm**: The value of this parameter identifies the
- 4205 encryption algorithm to be used. The definitions for these values are found in the [XMLENC]
- 4206 specification.
- 4207 • **PMode[1].Security.X509.Encryption.MinimumStrength**: The integer value of this parameter
- 4208 describes the effective strength the encryption algorithm MUST provide in terms of "effective" or
- 4209 random bits. The value is less than the key length in bits when check bits are used in the key. So,
- 4210 for example the 8 check bits of a 64-bit DES key would not be included in the count, and to
- 4211 require a minimum strength the same as supplied by DES would be reported by setting
- 4212 MinimumStrength to 56.
- 4213 • **PMode[1].Security.UsernameToken.username**: The value of this parameter is the username to
- 4214 include in a WSS Username Token.
- 4215 • **PMode[1].Security.UsernameToken.password**: The value of this parameter is the password to
- 4216 use inside a WSS Username Token.
- 4217 • **PMode[1].Security.UsernameToken.Digest**: The Boolean value of this parameter indicates
- 4218 whether a password digest should be included in the WSS UsernameToken element.
- 4219 • **PMode[1].Security.UsernameToken.Nonce**: The Boolean value of this parameter indicates
- 4220 whether the WSS UsernameToken element should contain a Nonce element.
- 4221 • **PMode[1].Security.UsernameToken.Created**: The Boolean value of this parameter indicates

4222
4223
4224
4225
4226
4227
4228
4229
4230
4231
4232
4233
4234
4235

- whether the WSS UsernameToken element should have a Created timestamp element.
- **PMode[1].Security.PModeAuthorize**: The Boolean value of this parameter indicates whether messages on this MEP leg must be authorized for processing under this P-Mode. If the parameter is "true" this implies that either PMode.Responder.Authorization.{username/password}, if the message is sent by Responder, or PMode.Initiator.Authorization if the message is sent by Initiator, must be used for this purpose, as specified in Section 7.10. For example, when set to "true" for a PullRequest message sent by the Initiator, the pulling will only be authorized over the MPC indicated by this Pull signal if (a) the MPC is the same as specified in the P-Mode leg for the pulled message, and (b) the signal contains the right credentials (e.g. username/password).
- **PMode[1].Security.SendReceipt**: The Boolean value of this parameter indicates whether a signed receipt (Receipt ebMS signal) containing a digest of the message must be sent back.
- **PMode[1].Security.SendReceipt.ReplyPattern**: This parameter indicates whether the Receipt signal is to be sent as a callback (value "callback"), or synchronously in the back-channel response (value "response"). If not present, any pattern may be used.

4236

APPENDIX E. P-Mode Values and ebMS MEP Bindings

4237

This section describes the effect that various Processing Mode values have on the binding of each ebMS MEP to HTTP.

4238

4239

E.1. P-Mode Values and the One-Way/Push MEP

4240

The following table illustrates how the One-Way/Push MEP binds to HTTP, depending on the values of P-Mode parameters that affect message content.

4241

4242

No combination of P-Mode values other than those listed below are expected to be used. Valid

4243

combinations not explicitly represented in the table below are mentioned in "notes" as variants of the

4244

most common ones.

MEP: One-way / Push	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3	Case 4	Case 5	Case 6
Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract:	False	False	True	True	True	True
Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern	N/A	N/A	Response	Response	Callback	Callback
ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse	False	True	False	True	False	True
HTTP Request (pushed message)	UserMessage	UserMessage	UserMessage + RM header (with AckRequested element if WS-Reliability)	UserMessage + RM header (see case 3)	UserMessage + RM header (see case 3)	UserMessage + RM header (see case 3)
HTTP Response	No SOAP envelope except if SOAP Fault. ^[a]	No SOAP envelope except if ebMS error on the UserMessage: an ebMS header for ErrorMessage. ^{[a],[b]}	SOAP header with RM Ack ^{[a],[c]}	SOAP header with RM Ack ^[c] , plus an ebMS header for ErrorMessage, if any. ^{[a],[b]}	Same as Case 1	Same as Case 2

[a] A SOAP Fault may be included if the request was in error. This Fault is combined with an ebMS error message (eb:Messaging/eb:SignalMessage/eb:Error) unless it is generated by the Security or Reliability module.

[b] The ebMS error message may or may not be combined with a SOAP Fault, depending on its severity.

[c] Acks may be grouped so that an Ack is not sent back for every UserMessage.

4245

E.2. P-Mode Values and the One-Way/Pull MEP

4246 The following table illustrates how the One-Way/Pull MEP binds to HTTP, depending on the values of P-
4247 Mode parameters that affect message content.

4248 No combination of P-Mode values other than those listed below are expected to be used. Valid
4249 combinations not explicitly represented in the table below are mentioned in "notes" as variants of the
4250 most common ones.

4251

MEP: One-way / Pull	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3
[1][s].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract:	False	True	True
[1][s].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern	N/A	Response	Response
[1][s].ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse	True ^[d]	True	True
HTTP Request (PullRequest signal)	PullRequest signal	PullRequest signal + RM header (with AckRequested element if WS-Reliability)	PullRequest signal + RM header (see case 2)
[1][u].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract:	False	True ^[e]	True ^[e]
[1][u].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern	N/A	None (in case no ack required for pulled message)	Callback (the pulled message must be acknowledged on a separate MEP)
HTTP Response (pulled message)	Pulled UserMessage ^[f]	SOAP header with RM Ack ^[g] of pull signal + Pulled UserMessage ^[f]	SOAP header with RM Ack ^[g] of pull signal + Pulled UserMessage ^[f]
A second HTTP Request in same direction as previous HTTP Request (For example, the next PullRequest signal.)	N/A	N/A	RM header containing Ack + possibly other SOAP headers/body.

4252

[d] A possible case where value is False – all other values being same - is not reported here.

[e] A possible case where the pulled message is not sent reliably while the pull signal is, would be of little relevance – not detailed here. Conversely, reliable sending of the pulled message requires reliable sending of the pull signal.

[f] or else an ebMS error (with or without SOAP Fault) if the Pull signal had an error.

[g] Acks may be grouped so that an Ack is not sent back for every UserMessage.

4253

E.3. P-Mode Values and the Two-Way/Sync MEP

4254 The following table illustrates how the Two-Way/Sync MEP binds to HTTP, depending on the values of P-
4255 Mode parameters that affect message content.

4256 No combination of P-Mode values other than those listed below are expected to be used. Valid
4257 combinations not explicitly represented in the table below are mentioned in "notes" as variants of the most
4258 common ones.

4256

MEP: Two-way / Sync	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3	Case 4
[1].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract:	False	True	True	True
[1].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern	N/A	Response ^[h]	Response ^[i]	Response ^[i]
[1].ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse	True ^[j]	True ^[j]	True ^[k]	True ^[k]
HTTP Request (request message)	UserMessage (request)	UserMessage + RM header (with AckRequested element if WS- Reliability)	UserMessage + RM header (see case 2)	UserMessage + RM header (see case 2)
[2].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.Contract:	False	False	True ^[k]	True ^[k]
[2].Reliability.AtLeastOnce.ReplyPattern	N/A	N/A	None (in case no ack required)	callback
HTTP Response (reply message)	UserMessage (reply) ^[l]	SOAP header with RM Ack ^[m] of request + UserMessage reply ^[l]	SOAP header with RM Ack ^[m] of request + UserMessage reply ^[l]	SOAP header with RM Ack ^[m] of request + UserMessage reply ^[l]
HTTP Request in same direction as previous HTTP Request (not belonging to this MEP)	N/A	N/A	N/A	RM header containing Ack + possibly other SOAP headers/body

4257

[h] A possible case where the reply pattern is callback instead of response is not reported here.

[i] the pattern for acknowledging the request must be "response" in case the reply must also be sent reliably. In that case, Acks should not be grouped.

[j] A possible case where value is False – all other values being same - is not reported here.

[k] The reply may not be sent reliably if the request is not.

[l] or else an ebMS error (with or without SOAP Fault) if the request had an error.

[m]Acks may be grouped so that an Ack is not sent back for every UserMessage.

4258

APPENDIX F. Compatibility Mapping to ebMS 2.0

4259

F.1. Objectives and Approach

4260

4261

4262

4263

4264

The reliance in V3 on recent SOAP-based specifications that cover security and reliability, could not be reconciled with preserving seamless backward compatibility with ebMS V2. In order to provide backward compatibility guidelines for implementations, this section defines mapping rules between V2 and V3 that establish an equivalence of header structures and processing features. These mapping rules define a *compatibility mapping*.

4265

4266

4267

4268

4269

4270

4271

4272

4273

4274

4275

The primary intent of the compatibility mapping rules is to define a semantic bridge between V2 and V3 artifacts and features. Although these rules may appear like translation rules, e.g. for converting a V2 header into a V3 header, it is clear that some backward-compatible V3 implementations will not use them that way. Processing both V2 and V3 may be achieved without run-time conversion of messages or of features from one version to the other. For example, a messaging gateway may support separately both versions, and deal with two separate processing flows that would join only at the application interface level. Even in such a case, the rules are useful to define an equivalence between V2 and V3 processing flows and their configuration (quality of service, error handling, etc.), as well as to define how the business header elements of one version map to the other version. These rules help in interpreting agreements (e.g. CPA) that have initially been defined for one version, so that they can be used or rewritten for the other version.

4276

4277

4278

A conformance profile that requires backward compatibility is defined in a companion document ("ebMS V3 Conformance Profiles"). Implementations or products that conform to this backward-compatibility profile must be able to:

4279

4280

4281

4282

- receive and process ebMS 2 messages (with features within "core" and "reliable messaging" modules).
- generate and send ebMS 2 messages (with features within "core" and "reliable messaging" modules).

4283

F.2. Compatibility Mapping Rules

4284

4285

4286

The compatibility mapping (CM) does not necessarily cover all feature allowed by ebMS 2, but a significant subset of these. It is made of mapping rules that are grouped into mapping modules (CM1 to CM6) that are briefly described below :

4287

CM rules:

4288

4289

4290

4291

4292

4293

- CM1: Header mapping rules
- CM2: Payload mapping rules
- CM3: Reliability mapping rules
- CM4: MEP mapping rules
- CM5: Signal mapping rules
- CM6: Processing mode mapping rules

4294

4295

Note: For a concise notation, the namespace prefixes eb2 and eb3 below respectively qualify V2 and V3 message artifacts.

4296

F.2.1. (CM1) Header Mapping Rules

4297

4298

4299

Although the ebMS headers from V2 and from V3 do not share the same XML schema, there is a large overlap between their elements. Only eb2:TimeToLive has no counterpart in the eb3 header, although it has a counterpart in a reliability header based on WS-Reliability.

4300

F.2.1.1. Rule CM1-a: Mapping General Message Information

4301

4302

eb2:MessageHeader/eb2:MessageData element maps to eb3/Messaging/eb3:MessageInfo, along with their contained elements (Timestamp, MessageId, RefToMessageId).

4303 Depending on its usage, the optional eb2:TimeToLive would map differently to an eb3 header. In case it
4304 has some application semantics (e.g. validity period of the enclosed business document), such a value
4305 can be added in V3 as eb3:Messageproperties/eb3:property/@name="timetolive". However, it has no
4306 MSH semantics in V3, unlike in V2 where it controls delivery. Implementing similar semantics would be
4307 done as an extension to V3. In case eb2:TimeToLive is used as a reliability feature (e.g. expected
4308 maximum time during which reliability mechanisms are expected to operate on the message before
4309 declaring failure) then it should map to message ExpiryTime (see rule CM3-c).

4310 **F.2.1.2. Rule CM1-b: Mapping Party Information**

4311 eb2:MessageHeader/eb2:From maps to eb3:PartyInfo/eb3:From, along with their sub-elements.
4312 Similarly, eb2:MessageHeader/eb2:To maps to eb3:PartyInfo/eb3:To, along with their sub-elements.

4313 **F.2.1.3. Rule CM1-c: Mapping Collaboration Information**

4314 eb2:ConversationId, eb2:Service, eb2:Action respectively map to
4315 eb3:CollaborationInfo/eb3:ConversationId, eb3:CollaborationInfo/eb3:Service and
4316 eb3:CollaborationInfo/eb3:Action.

4317 **F.2.1.4. Rule CM1-d: Mapping Agreement Reference**

4318 eb2:MessageHeader/eb2:CPAId maps to eb3:CollaborationInfo/eb3:AgreementRef.

4319 **F.2.2. (CM2) Payload Mapping Rules**

4320 **F.2.2.1. Rule CM2-a: Mapping Attachments**

4321 Every attachment (MIME part) in V2 maps to a similar attachment in V3. The SOAP Body should not be
4322 used in V3. If a V3 message that must map to a V2 message has a non-empty SOAP Body, the child XML
4323 document must be mapped to a separate MIME part in V2.

4324 **F.2.3. (CM3) Reliability Mapping Rules**

4325 These rules define how some V2 header elements map to a separate reliability header in V3, and vice-
4326 versa. When the reliability quality of service is not apparent in the V3 reliability header (e.g. in case V3
4327 uses WS-ReliableMessaging protocol), these rules rely on the P-Mode.Reliability parameters to determine
4328 the reliability elements in ebMS2 header.

4329 **F.2.3.1. Rule CM3-a: Acknowledgments**

4330 V2: AckRequested element maps to: in V3, wsrn:Request/AckRequested (if using WS-Reliability),
4331 optional wsrn:AckRequested header if using WS-ReliableMessaging (not necessary to get
4332 acknowledgments).

4333 V2: Acknowledgment element maps to: in V3, wsrn:Response/SequenceReplies (if using WS-Reliability),
4334 wsrn:SequenceAcknowledgment if using WS-ReliableMessaging.

4335 Note:

4336 The meaning of acknowledgments may be different in V2 and V3. See Section 8.2.4 for
4337 the options in acknowledgment semantics, depending on which reliability module is used.
4338 In V2, the baseline semantics is "on receipt": the message has been safely stored in
4339 persistent storage or delivered to the application interface. In V3, the recommended
4340 semantics is: the message has been delivered to the application. It may however be
4341 similar to V2 semantics depending on the implementation (e.g. when using WS-
4342 ReliableMessaging). In V3 the P-Mode parameter Reliability.AtLeastOnce.AckOnDelivery
4343 specifies this semantics which in general depends on the implementation: when "false", it
4344 is similar to V2 (on receipt).

4345 **F.2.3.2. Rule CM3-b: Reliability Contracts**

4346 The reliability contracts At-Least-Once delivery, At-Most-Once delivery, In-Order delivery, that in V3 are
4347 specified in the P-Mode, and also in the message header in case WS-Reliability is used, respectively map
4348 to V2 header elements: eb2:AckRequested, eb2:DuplicateElimination, eb2:MessageOrder.

4349 Any of the above reliability contracts requires the use of a reliable messaging module in V3, e.g. an
4350 implementation of WS-Reliability or of WS-ReliableMessaging.

4351 The delivery failure notification in V2 (always required for non-acknowledged messages) is supported by
4352 WS-Reliability and therefore by V3 using WS-Reliability. Such failure notification is not explicitly mandated
4353 by WS-ReliableMessaging, or could take place on either side. In order to achieve the same notification
4354 policy as in V2, when used in V3 an implementation of WS-ReliableMessaging must be extended with the
4355 same notification capability.

4356 Note:

4357 The conditions under which delivery failure is notified to the From Party (in eb2) or
4358 message Producer (in eb3) may be different.

4359 **F.2.3.3. Rule CM3-c: Duplicate Elimination**

4360 eb2:MessageHeader/eb2:DuplicateElimination maps to wsrn:Request/wsrn:DuplicateElimination in WS-
4361 Reliability. It maps to the AtMostOnce delivery assurance definition in WS-ReliableMessaging, assuming
4362 an implementation of WS-ReliableMessaging that supports this delivery assurance.

4363 **F.2.3.4. Rule CM3-d: Use of Sequences and Sequence Numbers**

4364 An eb2 message that contains either AckRequested or DuplicateElimination or both, and no
4365 eb2:MessageOrder, may map to a V3 message (when using WS-Reliability) with no wsrn:SequenceNum
4366 – only a wsrn:MessageId/@groupId value, which is unique for every such message.

4367 Note:

4368 The elements that identify a message sent reliably in V3 (wsrn:SequenceNum,
4369 wsrn:MessageId/@groupId in WS-Reliability, or /wsrn:Sequence/wsrn:MessageNumber
4370 in WS-ReliableMessaging) do NOT map to the ebMS message ID element (i.e.
4371 eb2:MessageData/eb2:MessageId in V2, and eb3:MessageInfo/eb3:MessageId in V3).

4372 **F.2.3.5. Rule CM3-e: Message Ordering**

4373 In case message ordering is required:

4374 eb2:MessageOrder maps to wsrn:Request/wsrn:MessageOrder.

4375 eb2:SequenceNumber maps to wsrn:Request/wsrn:SequenceNum (with WS-Reliability).

4376 The scope of a message sequence (and of the message ordering contract) is determined by
4377 eb2:ConversationId in V2, and by MessageId/@groupId in V3; i.e. sequence numbers must be unique
4378 within this scope.

4379 The feature maps to the InOrder delivery assurance definition in WS-ReliableMessaging, assuming an
4380 implementation of WS-ReliableMessaging that supports this delivery assurance.

4381 **F.2.3.6. Rule CM3-f: Expiration Timeout**

4382 In case eb2:MessageHeader/eb2:MessageData/eb2:TimeToLive is used for expressing the maximum
4383 time during which reliability mechanisms are required to handle the message, it maps to
4384 wsrn:Request/wsrn:ExpiryTime.

4385 **F.2.4. (CM4) MEP Mapping Rules**

4386 Defines how V2 header elements that control the MEP in use and its mapping to the underlying protocol,
4387 map into V3 and vice versa. Also defines how CPA elements that control ebMS V2 MEPs map to P-Mode
4388 parameter and vice-versa.

4389 **F.2.4.1. Rule CM4-a: One-Way/Push With No Signals**

4390 In V3, this MEP, with no ebMS signal and no reliability acknowledgments on the response (back-channel),
4391 will map to a V2 message with no SyncReply element in eb2 header. RefToMessageId must not be used
4392 in the V3 message (it has a strict MEP semantics). The agreements map as follows:

4393 V2 (CPA): syncReplyMode=none.

4394 V3 (P-Mode): PMode.MEP="One-way", PMode.MEPbinding="push",
4395 PMode.ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse="false". PMode.Reliability.ReplyPattern must NOT be
4396 "Response".

4397 **F.2.4.2. Rule CM4-b: One-Way/Push With Signals**

4398 One-Way / Push in V3, with ebMS signal and reliability acknowledgments on the response (back-channel),
4399 will map to a V2 message with SyncReply element in eb2 header. RefToMessageId must not be used in
4400 the V3 message (it has a strict MEP semantics). The agreements map as follows:

4401 V2 (CPA): syncReplyMode= mshSignalsOnly.

4402 V3 (P-Mode): PMode.MEP="One-way", PMode.MEPbinding="push",
4403 PMode.ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse="true", PMode.Reliability.ReplyPattern="Response".

4404 **F.2.4.3. Rule CM4-c: Two-Way/Sync With No Signals**

4405 In V3, this MEP, with no ebMS signal and no reliability acknowledgments on the response (back-channel),
4406 will map to a V2 message (1st leg) with SyncReply element in eb2 header. In both versions, the response
4407 message refers to the request (leg 1) using RefToMessageId. The agreements map as follows:

4408 V2 (CPA): (leg 1) syncReplyMode= responseOnly.

4409 V3 (P-Mode): PMode.MEP="Two-way", PMode.MEPbinding="sync",
4410 PMode.ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse="false". PMode.Reliability.ReplyPattern may NOT be
4411 "Response".

4412 **F.2.4.4. Rule CM4-d: Two-Way/Sync With Signals**

4413 In V3, this MEP, with ebMS signal and reliability acknowledgments on the response (back-channel), will
4414 map to a V2 message (1st leg) with SyncReply element in eb2 header. In both versions, the response
4415 message refers to the request (leg 1) using RefToMessageId. The agreements map as follows:

4416 V2 (CPA): (leg 1) syncReplyMode= signalsAndResponse

4417 V3 (P-Mode): PMode.MEP="Two-way", PMode.MEPbinding="sync",
4418 PMode.ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse="true". PMode.Reliability.ReplyPattern ="Response".

4419 **F.2.4.5. Rule CM4-e: Two-Way/Push-and-Push**

4420 In V3, this MEP will map to an exchange of two messages in V2, where the second message refers to the
4421 first one using RefToMessageId (as in V3). The agreements map as follows:

4422 Option 1: (signals may be sent back on underlying response)

4423 V2 (CPA): (leg 1 and leg 2) syncReplyMode= mshSignalsOnly.

4424 V3 (P-Mode): PMode.MEP="Two-way", PMode.MEPbinding="Push-and-Push".

4425 PMode.ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse="true". PMode.Reliability.ReplyPattern="Response".

4426 Option 2: (signals may NOT be sent back on underlying response)

4427 V2 (CPA): (leg 1 and leg 2) syncReplyMode= none.

4428 V3 (P-Mode): PMode.MEP="Two-way", PMode.MEPbinding="Push-and-Push".

4429 PMode.ErrorHandling.Report.AsResponse="false". PMode.Reliability.ReplyPattern different from
4430 "Response".

4431 **F.2.5. (CM5) Signal Mapping Rules**

4432 **F.2.5.1. Rule CM5-a: Error Metadata Mapping**

4433 The metadata mapping of the Error elements in V2 and V3 is as follows. In some cases the semantics is
4434 close though not exactly same.

- 4435 (a) Cases where a straight mapping exist from V2 to V3:
- 4436 1. V2: Error/@severity (warning, error) maps to V3: eb:Error/@severity (respectively: warning,
4437 failure)
 - 4438 2. V2: Error/@codeContext maps to V3: eb:Error/@origin
 - 4439 3. V2: Error/@errorCode maps to V3: eb:Error/shortDescription
 - 4440 4. V2: Error/@location maps to V3: eb:Error/ErrorDetail
 - 4441 5. V2: Error/Description maps to V3: eb:Error/Description
 - 4442 6. V2: MessageData/RefToMessageId maps to V3: eb:Error/@refToMessageInError
- 4443 (b) Cases where error element in V2 has no specified counterpart in V3:
- 4444 1. V2: Error/@id. In V3 would map to: XML Id attribute.
- 4445 (c) Cases where error element in V3 has no specified counterpart in V2:
- 4446 1. V3: eb:Error/@errorCode
 - 4447 2. V3: eb:Error/@category

4448 **F.2.5.2. Rule CM5-b: Error Value Mapping**

4449 The value-equivalence between Errors in V2 and V3 is as follows, based on the semantics of these errors:

4450 Note: the severity levels may not map in some cases, meaning that processing may continue in V3 while
4451 aborting in V2.

- 4452 (a) Cases where a straight mapping exist from V2 to V3:
- 4453 1. V2: ValueNotRecognized maps to V3: ValueNotRecognized
 - 4454 2. V2: NotSupported maps to V3: FeatureNotSupported
 - 4455 3. V2: DeliveryFailure maps to V3: DeliveryFailure
 - 4456 4. V2: MimeProblem maps to V3: MimeInconsistency
- 4457 (b) Cases where a case by case mapping exist from V2 to V3:
- 4458 1. V2: Inconsistent may map to V3: ValueInconsistent, in some cases InvalidHeader
 - 4459 2. V2: SecurityFailure maps to V3: FailedAuthentication or FailedDecryption
 - 4460 3. V2: OtherXML may map to V3: Other
 - 4461 4. V2: Unknown maps to (in most cases) V3: Other
- 4462 (c) Cases where error value in V2 has no counterpart in V3:
- 4463 1. V2: TimeToLiveExpired: no counterpart (not relevant).
- 4464 (d) Cases where error value in V3 has no counterpart in V2:
- 4465 1. V3: ConnectionFailure,
 - 4466 2. V3: EmptyMessagePartitionChannel
 - 4467 3. V3: ProcessingModeMismatch
 - 4468 4. V3: DysfunctionalReliability

4469 **F.2.5.3. Rule CM5-c: Ping and Pong Services**

- 4470 (a) Ping Service:
- 4471 1. V2: Service element: urn:oasis:names:tc:ebxml-msg:service, and Action element

- 4472 containing: Ping.
- 4473 2. V3: Service element: <http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml->
4474 [msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/service](http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/service), and Action element: <http://docs.oasis->
4475 [open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/test](http://docs.oasis-open.org/ebxml-msg/ebms/v3.0/ns/core/200704/test)
- 4476 (b) Pong Service:
- 4477 No corresponding Pong service in V3 Core specification. This feature may be defined in a
4478 forthcoming Part 2 (Advanced Features).

4479 **F.2.6. (CM6) Processing Mode Mapping Rules**

4480 These mapping rules, to be specified in a separate white paper, will define how the messaging subset of
4481 an existing CPA instance in V2 maps to a V3 P-Mode. They also provide guidance on how to represent a
4482 P-Mode with a CPA and related extensions.

4483

4484 APPENDIX G. Conformance

4485 This section introduces the notion of conformance profiles for MSH implementations. The expression
4486 "conformance profile" is to be understood in the sense of [QAFW]. A conformance profile in ebMS will
4487 define a class of implementations that may implement only a subset of this specification, and/or a
4488 particular set of options (e.g. transport protocol binding, SOAP version). This specification does not define
4489 nor recommend any specific conformance profile. Such conformance profiles will be defined separately
4490 from the ebMS standard, in an adjunct document. A particular conformance profile will be distinguished as
4491 the baseline for achieving interoperability between most implementations dedicated to e-Business or e-
4492 Government.

4493 The section defines a common structure and syntax for defining conformance profiles.

4494 Note: "Conformance profile" should not be confused with "usage profile":

- 4495 • *Conformance profile*: defines a set of capabilities that an MSH implementation must have. This is
4496 determined at development time regardless of the way the MSH is being used later.
- 4497 • *Usage profile*: defines a way of using an MSH implementation, that a community of users has
4498 agreed upon. This may in turn require a particular conformance profile.

4499 For example, a conformance profile may require that an MSH support the optional MessageProperties
4500 header element, meaning it is able to extract it from a received message or to add it to a message to be
4501 sent. In contrast, a usage profile will additionally require that some specific property name be present in
4502 the MessageProperty element of each message.

4503 The interpretation of normative material follows the general rule below, as a complement to RFC2119:

- 4504 • When the keywords OPTIONAL, SHOULD and MAY apply to the behavior of the implementation,
4505 the implementation is free to support these behaviors or not, as meant in [RFC2119].
- 4506 • When the keywords OPTIONAL, SHOULD and MAY apply to message contents that relate to a
4507 more general feature, an implementation that conforms to a profile requiring support for this
4508 feature MUST be capable of processing these optional message contents according to the
4509 described ebXML semantics.
- 4510 • The keywords REQUIRED, SHALL or MUST indicate features that an MSH must support or
4511 implement, but only within the context of a conformance profile requiring support for this feature or
4512 module containing this feature.
- 4513 • When an MSH receives a message that exhibits some content feature that is either
4514 recommended or required by the specification, and if this MSH implements a conformance profile
4515 that does not require support for that content feature, then it MUST generate a
4516 FeatureNotSupported error (see Section 6).

4517

4518

APPENDIX H. Acknowledgments

4519

The OASIS ebXML Messaging Services Technical Committee would like to acknowledge the contributions of its committee members, who at the time of publication were:

4520

Hamid Ben Malek, Fujitsu Software <hbenmalek@us.fujitsu.com>

4521

Jacques Durand, Fujitsu Software <jdurand@us.fujitsu.com>

4522

Ric Emery, Axway Inc. <remery@us.axway.com>

4523

Kazunori Iwasa, Fujitsu Limited <kiwasa@jp.fujitsu.com>

4524

Ian Jones, British Telecommunications plc <ian.c.jones@bt.com>

4525

Rajashekar Kailar, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention <kailar@bnetal.com>

4526

Dale Moberg, Axway Inc. <dmoberg@us.axway.com>

4527

Sacha Schlegel, Individual <sacha@schlegel.li>

4528

Pete Wenzel, Sun Microsystems <pete.wenzel@sun.com>

4529

4530

In addition, the following former Technical Committee members contributed to this specification:

4531

Doug Bunting, Sun Microsystems <doug.bunting@sun.com>

4532

Matthew MacKenzie, Adobe Systems Incorporated <mattm@adobe.com>

4533

Jeff Turpin, Axway Inc. <jturpin@us.axway.com>

4534

4536

APPENDIX I. Revision History

4537 *[This appendix is optional, but helpful. It should be removed for specifications that are at OASIS Standard*
 4538 *level. Set the number format for the Rev and Date fields as you wish (select the desired string and choose*
 4539 *Format>Number Format...); the examples below are user-defined formats.]*

4540

Rev	Date	By Whom	What
WD 01	05 May 2004	Matt MacKenzie	Moved content over from 2.0/2.1 document source.
WD 02	14 May 2004	Matt MacKenzie	A few updates to the explanations and more thorough usage of available styles.
WD 03	01 Oct 2004	Matt MacKenzie	Integrated Reliable messaging, many editorial changes also.
WD 04	28 Sep 2005	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applied OpenOffice Template, formatting changes. • New Messaging Model section from Jacques (was Section 6 in draft 03; is now Section 3). • New Message Packaging section from Jacques (was Section 8; is now Section 5). • New Security Module section from Ric (was Section 10.1; is now Section 6.1). • New Reliable Messaging Module section from Jacques (was Section 10.6; is now Section 6.6). • New WS-Reliability Binding section from Jacques (Section 9.1).
WD 05	05 Oct 2005	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Changed title to indicate this is Part 1. • Moved several sections to a new Part 2 (Advanced Features) document, for future reference. • Rewritten Introduction & Operation sections from Jacques. • Messaging Model and Message Packaging section updates from Jacques. • Began Bibliography Database and insertion of references. • Section rearrangement and edits as discussed 10/05/2005.
WD 06	21 Oct 2005	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Error Module section from Hamid & Jacques. • Security Section updates from Ric. • Added Iwasa and Hamid as contributors. • New Packaging Diagrams from Iwasa & Jacques. • Removed sections (to be considered for later Advanced Features document): FTP Binding, Security Services Profiles, WSDL. • Minor updates throughout.

Rev	Date	By Whom	What
WD 07	23 Nov 2005	Pete Wenzel	<p>This revision is a candidate for Committee Draft status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Editorial corrections to Introduction. • Overhaul of Messaging Model and Error Sections by Jacques & Hamid. • Editorial corrections to Operation Context. • New Message Pulling Module from Fujitsu. • Minor updates to Message Packaging. • Additional Security Examples, New Sign+Encrypt Sections from Ric. • Additional minor corrections throughout. • References, formatting, reorganization, other editorial changes throughout. • Designated several of the later Sections as (Appendix).
CD 01	30 Nov 2005	Pete Wenzel	<p>This revision has been voted Committee Draft status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Updated Status statement and other standard boilerplate text on title page. • Changed incorrect "RMP" references to "MSH". • Updated Figure 5 and removed corresponding EdNote.
WD 08	13 Feb 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replaced eb:Message by eb:Messaging. • Update Figures 7 & 8. • Renumbered Section 5.2 • New Conformance Appendix, from Jacques' Draft 0.7 (for continued review) • New SOAP Format and Bindings Appendix draft from Hamid (for review) • Editorial updates to Reliability Binding Section from Jacques • WS-ReliableMessaging Binding from Jacques (for review) • Completed Bibliography; removed many redundant references.

Rev	Date	By Whom	What
WD 10	07 Mar 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Updated occurrences of Partref (now PartInfo) and @idref (now @href), and removed eb:id. • Removed sections related to SOAP actors. • Removed @mustUnderstand section (redundant). • Removed references to @soapresp; no longer used. • Corrections in sections 8.1 and 8.2.2 from Jacques. • Added ProcessingModeMismatch and DysfunctionalReliability errors; renumbered error codes by section. • Corrections to SOAP One-Way MEP (2.2.2.1). • Corrections to Message Pulling Objectives (4.1). • Replaced Concept of Operation section with Processing Mode (#91 from Jacques & Hamid); changed terminology from "operation context" to "P-Mode". • Added Message Packaging Examples section. • Corrections to Reliability Protocol Bindings. • Conformance Appendix: Removed specific conformance profiles; replaced with template (Conformance #10 from Jacques). • Removed StatusRequest/Response signals from Signal Message Packaging Figure. • Replaced Message Pipes section with latest (#12 from Jacques). • Removed Examples of Supported Topologies section. • Added Namespace Table from Hamid. • Note about WSS 1.0/1.1 in Section 6.1. • Minor edits, Sections 2, 4, 5 from Hamid. • Added @refToMessageInError. • Corrected references to errorCodes/shortDescriptions. • Removed/replaced justification text from SOAP Binding section. • Removed Section 11 (old Protocol Binding section). • Corrected SOAP 1.2 media type. • Removed 4 simplest Security packaging examples from Section 6; retained signed+encrypted examples, which depict all necessary elements. • Added proposed Security Requirements section from Ric. • Added WS-ReliableMessaging status statements to binding section. <p>Did not yet change:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In 5.2.1, eb:CollaborationInfo OPTIONAL for Response User Message. ??

Rev	Date	By Whom	What
WD 11	20 Mar 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed SecurityTokenReference from 6.9.1.1 Editorial corrections in Sections 2 & 3 from Jacques. Updated Figure 9 to depict multiple eb:Error elements. Removed @syncresp. Updated @pipe usage. Updated URI constants to be URLs instead of URNs. Changed reference to "ping" to a new "test" action (5.2.1.9). Section 1.2, CPP/A positioning, suggested by M. Martin. Security Section rewrite from Ric. Added new Security Error Codes: FailedDecryption and PolicyNoncompliance. Removed unneeded material from PullRequest Security Section. Added Section 1.3 caveat regarding specification alternatives as proposed by Jacques. Additions to SMTP Binding from Jacques.
WD 12	10 Apr 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Message Service -> Messaging Service. Pipe -> Message Partition Flow in text and figures. Fixed URI in examples. Editorial Corrections from Jacques. XML Schema from Hamid.
CD 02	12 Apr 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Renamed @mpflow -> @mpf. Adjusted cardinality of error attributes. Inserted ConversationInfo in example.
WD 13	01 May 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Relabeled Figure 7. Editorial corrections and clarifications throughout, provided by Jacques, Hamid, Ric, Dale. Adjustments to MEP text from Jacques. Rearranged Chapters to make more logical sense.
(CD 03) PR 01	09 May 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Updated Document Status.
WD 14	21 Aug 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New MEP Section from Jacques & Hamid (received 25 Jul 2006). Revised Reliable Messaging Model Section from Jacques (posted 05 Aug 2006). Changes based on some resolved Public Review issues, as documented in the issues list.

Rev	Date	By Whom	What
WD 15	03 Oct 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CORE-77, new Compatibility Appendix (13). • CORE-77, new Introduction Section 1.3. • CORE-16, Section 2.1.3. • CORE-26, Section 3.4.1. • New Processing Mode Model Appendix (12). • Updates to P-Mode Section (4). • CORE-47, Sections 5.2.1, 5.3.1. • CORE-56, partial. • CORE-73, Section 4.3. • CORE-15 (bundling options), Section 5.2, 5.2.1.
WD 16	14 Dec 2006	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fixed Appendix headings, Table of Figures hyperlinks. • Updates to WS-ReliableMessaging Binding, Nov 16 2006 from Jacques. • Updates to Compatibility Appendix, Version 0.6 (-h) from Jacques & Hamid, 21 Nov 2006. (incl. CORE-93) • New Message Authorization Section from Hamid & Jacques, 22 Nov 2006 and edits by Pete. • Editorial corrections throughout from Jacques, from 22 Nov 2006 email. • Updates to P-Mode Model from Hamid & Jacques (0.82, 29 Nov 2006). (incl. CORE-9, CORE-10, CORE-54, CORE-55, CORE-56) • CORE-46, Section 5.2.3.13. • CORE-50, Section 6.2.2. • CORE-53, Sections 8.1.1 & 4.1. • CORE-89, Section 1.3.

Rev	Date	By Whom	What
WD 17	07 Mar 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CORE-44, xml:id reference, Section 5.2.2.12. • CORE-87, Role now required, with default value, Section 5.2.2.3. • 12/19/2006 Edits from Jacques: CORE-9, Section 3.1; CORE-83, Section D.2.3; CORE-92+CORE-97, Section B.2; two-way definition in Section 2.2.3. • B.2 edits from Jacques (ebMS3-WS-ReliableMessaging-binding-4.pdf). • CORE-90, removed "wsswa" prefix. • CORE-92, reference latest RM draft. • 02/14/2007 Error Reporting update from Jacques, Section 6.6. • CORE-69, New Appendix (E), from Jacques (MEP-binding-cases-3.odt), and associated references. • 02/06/2007 Edits from Jacques, Sections 4, E.2.3. • Updates to P-Mode parameters (Appendix D), including CORE-88 Security rework (PMode-model-86.doc). • New Schema (Appendix A) from Hamid & Dale; CORE-2, CORE-3, CORE-4, CORE-5, CORE-6, CORE-22, CORE-48. • CORE-45, new ExternalReferenceError, Section 6.7.1. • CORE-52, Section 7.4 from Pete. • CORE-83 (Partial), Maximum message/payload size P-Mode parameters, D.3.3. • CORE-98, Fixed Examples. • CORE-91, New bundled message example, Section 5.3.5. • CORE-96, Receipt Signal added, Sections 5.2.3.3, 5.3.4 (example from Dale), 7.12.2, D.3.6. • CORE-103, Section 7.7, Username Token support not required. • Adjusted title page metadata, moved contributor lists to Appendix, per template requirements. • New Copyright text (04/15/2005 IPR Policy version).
WD 18	19 Mar 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 03/13/2007 Edits from Jacques, Sections 5.2.3.3, 2.2.2, Appendix I. • CORE-95, Updated Figure 15. • CORE-102, Section F.2.6. • 03/14/2007 Edits from Jacques, Appendix E. • CORE-105, Updated reference to WSRM CD7. • CORE-106, Signed Receipt Example, Section 7.9.3. • CORE-107, Updated schema and schemaLocation URIs.

Rev	Date	By Whom	What
WD 19	27 Mar 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CORE-110: Section 5.2.2.7, AgreementRef/@type now optional, default content is URI. @pmode spelling fixed in schema. • Section 5.2.3.3, Receipt signal contents SHOULD follow BPSS Signal (was MUST). • Section 7.9.3 example, removed "mid:" reference scheme. • CORE-107: Updated namespace and feature URIs throughout. • CORE-112: Section 5.2.2.12, removed attributes from PayloadInfo. • CORE-113: Section 5.2.2.13 and schema, clarify cardinality of eb:PartInfo/Schema attributes. • CORE-111: Section 5.1.3.6 and examples, removed Messaging/@eb:version.
CD 04	28 Mar 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Updated Document Status.
WD 20	18 Apr 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CORE-117: Updated SMTP Binding Note (Section C.3). • CORE-119: Changed "Flow" terminology to "Channel". • CORE-119: Updated namespace and schema to reflect @mpf renaming. • CORE-120: Filled-in Related Work section.
WD 21	24 Apr 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CORE-121: Corrected element/attribute capitalization, cardinality and qualification in schema, Section 5 and Examples.
WD 22	25 Apr 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CORE-119: Corrected instances of EmptyMessagePartitionFlow.
(CD 05) PR 02	26 Apr 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Updated Document Status. • Moved References Section to correct location.
WD 23	22 May 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CORE-105, Updated WSRM reference to its CS version. • CORE-108, Updated PartyId type references. • CORE-122, Added references to HTTP, SMTP. • CORE-123, Added URIs where appropriate. • CORE-124, Removed Conformance Definitions and Template. • CORE-126, Applied editorial corrections and clarifications. • Corrected and regenerated some Figures. • Editorial corrections (grammar, spelling) through the end of Section 3. • CORE-101: Corrections to examples based on validation results. • CORE-128: "Timestamp" and "ConversationId" element names in schema corrected.
WD 24	23 May 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CORE-130, Updated text referencing WS-I profiles.
CD 06	23 May 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Updated Document Status.
CS 01	31 May 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Updated Document Status.

Rev	Date	By Whom	What
WD 25	19 Jun 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CORE-128, Corrected additional element names.
WD 26	22 Jun 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CORE-131, Editorial corrections from Pim. Editorial corrections (grammar, clarifications) throughout Sections 4 and 5.
CD 07	29 Jun 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Updated Document Status.
CS 02	12 Jul 2007	Pete Wenzel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Updated Document Status.

4541